《新概念英语》(新版) 辅导丛书

主编 何其莘 顾问 亚历山大(英) 金斯伯里(英)

新概念英语 4

NCE Exercise Companion

练习详解 Fluency in English

孙玉荣 杜 建 编著

Fluency in English
流利英语

外语教学与研究出版社
LONGMAN 朗文

《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书

主编　何其莘
顾问　亚历山大(英)
　　　金斯伯里(英)

新概念英语练习详解
NCE Exercise Companion 4

Fluency in English

孙玉荣　杜　建　编著

外语教学与研究出版社
LONGMAN 朗文

(京)新登字 155 号

京权图字 01 - 2000 - 1350

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

新概念英语练习详解 4/孙玉荣,杜建编著. - 北京:外语教学与研究出版社,
2001
(《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书)
ISBN 7 - 5600 - 2329 - 0

Ⅰ.新… Ⅱ.①孙… ②杜… Ⅲ.英语 - 解题 Ⅳ.H31 - 44

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2001)第 048593 号

新概念英语练习详解 4
编著:孙玉荣 杜 建
* * *
出版发行:外语教学与研究出版社
社 址:北京市西三环北路 19 号 (100089)
网 址:http://www.fltrp.com.cn
印 刷:北京外国语大学印刷厂
开 本:850×1168 1/32
印 张:15.5
版 次:2001 年 7 月第 1 版 2001 年 7 月第 1 次印刷
印 数:1—31000 册
书 号:ISBN 7 - 5600 - 2329 - 0/G·1073
定 价:18.90 元
* * *
如有印刷、装订质量问题出版社负责调换
制售盗版必究 举报查实奖励
版权保护办公室举报电话:(010)68917519

外研社 朗文 新概念英语 练习详解 4

NEW CONCEPT ENGLISH *(New Edition)*

EXERCISE COMPANION 4: *Fluency in English*

English edition of *New Concept English* © L. G. Alexander 1967
Original English material © Addison Wesley Longman Ltd. 1997
This edition of New Concept English EXERCISE COMPANION 4
with the addition of Chinese material © Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and Pearson Education North Asia Ltd., 2001. This edition is published under the Longman imprint, which is an imprint of Pearson Education Group, and by arrangement with Pearson Education North Asia Ltd., Hong Kong.

Licensed for sale in the mainland territory of the People's Republic of China only.

This simplified Chinese characters edition first published in 2001 jointly by Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and Pearson Education North Asia Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

合作出版人：李朋义(外研社)　沈维贤(朗文)
主编：何其莘
顾问：亚历山大(英)　金斯伯里(英)
责任编辑：任小玫
执行编辑：周继东
封面设计：诸中英

外语教学与研究出版社
培生教育出版北亚洲有限公司 联合出版

本书任何部分之文字及图片，如未获得本社之书面同意，不得用任何方式抄袭、节录或翻印。

本简体字版只供在中华人民共和国内地销售。
凡属合法出版之本书，封面均贴有防伪标贴；
凡无防伪标贴者均属未经授权之版本，
本书出版者及原版权持有者将予以追究。

朗文(Longman)为培生教育出版集团(Pearson Education Group)所拥有之商标。

《新概念英语》（新版）是《新概念英语》1967 年首次出版以来第一次推出的新版本。现在，由该经典教材的出版者外语教学与研究出版社和培生教育出版北亚洲有限公司独家授权、由原编著者何其莘教授亲自主持编写、亚历山大先生担任顾问的这套《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书涵盖自学导读、练习详解、词汇、语法以及录音练习等各方面的内容，是面向中国广大英语爱好者的一套权威的辅导用书，定能满足中国广大读者对《新概念英语》（新版）的全方位的要求，并使英语爱好者在学习过程中最大限度地发挥自己的潜能。

《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书包括：

《新概念英语自学导读 1》（*NCE Study Guide 1: First Things First*）

《新概念英语自学导读 2》（*NCE Study Guide 2: Practice & Progress*）

《新概念英语自学导读 3》（*NCE Study Guide 3: Developing Skills*）

《新概念英语自学导读 4》（*NCE Study Guide 4: Fluency in English*）

《新概念英语练习详解 1》（*NCE Exercise Companion 1: First Things First*）

《新概念英语练习详解 2》（*NCE Exercise Companion 2: Practice & Progress*）

《新概念英语练习详解 3》（*NCE Exercise Companion 3: Developing Skills*）

《新概念英语练习详解 4》（*NCE Exercise Companion 4: Fluency in English*）

《新概念英语语法手册》（*An NCE Grammar Handbook*）

《新概念英语词汇大全》（*An NCE Complete Vocabulary List*）

《新概念英语词汇自学手册》（*An NCE Pocket Dictionary*）

《新概念英语录音练习手册》（*Recorded Drills for NCE*）

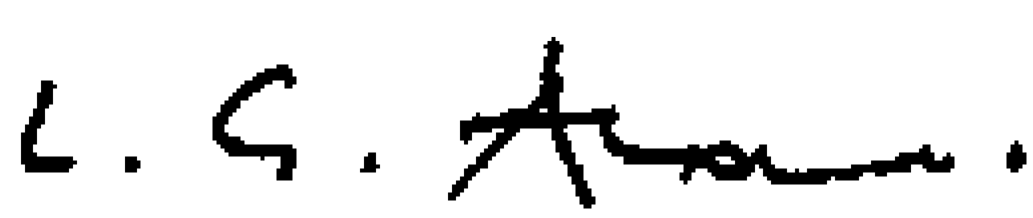
前　　言

该《练习详解》专为所有使用《流利英语》的学习者而设计，特别适用于自学者。

书中，针对学生用书48课所有练习均有进一步说明。其中包括：

- 语法、词汇与写作练习（包括理解练习参考答案、词汇练习参考答案、句子结构练习参考答案、关键句型练习参考答案、段落练习参考答案、摘要练习参考答案、作文练习参考答案与难点练习参考答案等）；
- 多项选择练习。

我们确信这些补充材料将使各种起点的学习者从中受益，并顺利学完本课程。



L.G.亚历山大

目　　录

测试1答案 …… 1

Lesson 1　Finding fossil man 发现化石人 …… 4

Lesson 2　Spare that spider 不要伤害蜘蛛 …… 13

Lesson 3　Matterhorn man 马特霍恩山区人 …… 22

Lesson 4　Seeing hands 能看见东西的手 …… 32

Lesson 5　Youth 青年 …… 40

Lesson 6　The sporting spirit 体育的精神 …… 50

Lesson 7　Bats 蝙蝠 …… 59

Lesson 8　Trading standards 贸易标准 …… 68

Lesson 9　Royal espionage 王室谍报活动 …… 75

Lesson 10　Silicon Valley 硅谷 …… 84

Lesson 11　How to grow old 如何安度晚年 …… 92

Lesson 12　Banks and their customers 银行和顾客 …… 98

Lesson 13　The search for oil 探寻石油 …… 110

Lesson 14　The Butterfly Effect 蝴蝶效应 …… 119

Lesson 15　Secrecy in industry 工业中的秘密 …… 127

Lesson 16　The modern city 现代城市 …… 135

Lesson 17　A man-made disease 人为的疾病 …… 145

Lesson 18　Porpoises 海豚 …… 155

Lesson 19　The stuff of dreams 话说梦的本质 …… 165

Lesson 20　Snake poison 蛇毒 …… 174

Lesson 21　William S. Hart and the early 'Western' film 威廉·S·哈特和早期"西部"影片 …… 185

Lesson 22　Knowledge and progress 知识和进步 …… 195

Lesson 23 Bird flight 鸟的飞行方法 ………………………… 205
Lesson 24 Beauty 美 ……………………………………… 215
测试 2 答案……………………………………………………… 226
Lesson 25 Non-auditory effects of noise 噪音的非听觉效应
………………………………………………………………… 229
Lesson 26 The past life of the earth 地球上的昔日生命 …… 241
Lesson 27 The *Vasa* "瓦萨"号 …………………………… 251
Lesson 28 Patients and doctors 病人与医生 ……………… 261
Lesson 29 The hovercraft 气垫船 ………………………… 273
Lesson 30 Exploring the sea-floor 海底勘探 ……………… 281
Lesson 31 The sculptor speaks 雕塑家的语言 …………… 292
Lesson 32 Galileo reborn 伽利略的复生 ………………… 303
Lesson 33 Education 教育 ………………………………… 314
Lesson 34 Adolescence 青春期 …………………………… 326
Lesson 35 Space odyssey 太空探索 ……………………… 338
Lesson 36 The cost of government 政府的开支 ………… 348
Lesson 37 The process of ageing 衰老过程 ……………… 358
Lesson 38 Water and the traveller 水和旅行者 ………… 369
Lesson 39 What every writer wants 作家之所需 ………… 379
Lesson 40 Waves 海浪 …………………………………… 390
Lesson 41 Training elephants 训练大象 ………………… 399
Lesson 42 Recording an earthquake 记录地震 …………… 409
Lesson 43 Are there strangers in space? 宇宙中有外星人吗?
………………………………………………………………… 420
Lesson 44 Patterns of culture 文化的模式 ……………… 432
Lesson 45 Of men and galaxies 人和星系 ……………… 444
Lesson 46 Hobbies 业余爱好 …………………………… 453
Lesson 47 The great escape 大逃亡 …………………… 463
Lesson 48 Planning a share portfolio 规划股份投资 ……… 475

测试1答案

理解练习参考答案

1. The boy was able to get to the sea bed quickly because the weight of the stone carried him down.
2. The boy found it difficult to swim after he was inside the tunnel because it was so narrow and because the water pushed him up against the roof.
3. The boy got into a panic as he swam through the tunnel because he wondered if the tunnel might be filled with weed.

词汇练习参考答案

goggles(1.1) = large spectacles with rubber frames that people wear when they dive or swim underwater so that the water cannot get into their eyes

filled his lungs(1.3) = breathed, or drew in, as much air into his lungs as he could, until they were full

wriggling (1. 5) = moving or twisting his shoulders with short, quick movements forward and backward, or from side to side

as levers(1.9) = like tools, often metal bars, that are used for lifting or moving something heavy or stiff

dizzied(1.10) = made him feel dizzy or slightly confused and light-headed

inflated(1.11) = blown up or swollen (with air), full of air

slimy(1.13) = unpleasantly slippery, like rotten seaweed

摘要练习参考答案

His lungs were hurting, but he went on counting. At a hundred and fifteen, he saw a crack with sunlight coming through, but he could not swim up. He had to go on through the tunnel although his head was aching and his lungs cracking. He pulled himself forward, repeating a hundred and fifteen and feeling that he was going to become unconscious. Suddenly there was green light, he groped forward, felt nothing and kicked up into the open sea. (80 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[The most frightening experience I have ever had.]

The story of the boy swimming to the open sea through a long water-filled tunnel immediately reminded me of an experience I had a few years ago.

I was still at school at the time. The town I lived in was situated on the coast and in a valley with hills round it, and some friends and I used to enjoy cycling up into the hills at weekends to go caving. I must explain that the local hills had been formed from soft rock and were full of caves, which in their turn had been formed over millions of years by streams and underground rivers.

One weekend, we decided to go down one cave which was quite difficult. In fact we had arranged for a professional experienced caver to act as our guide and take us down. We cycled out and met our guide at a cavers' hut, changed into our caving clothes, collected our equipment together—helmets and lamps, ropes, rope ladders and so on—and walked to the entrance of the cave.

At first we had no difficulties. Then, when we were about 30 metres below ground and were walking along in an underground stream, the roof of the tunnel dipped down in front of us and we came to a large pool of water. We thought that was the end of the tunnel. Not at all. Instead of turning back, our guide said: 'The tunnel goes under the water here for two or three metres. Just lie down on your stomach, take a deep breath and pull yourself through. You'll only be under water for a few seconds. Just follow me.' We were all horrified—but we did it.

That was the most frightening experience I have ever had and I dreaded the idea of going back through in order to get out of the cave again. Fortunately, our guide then told us that there was another way out through another tunnel which did not involve diving underwater. We were all very pleased!

(336 *words*)

Lesson 1
Finding fossil man
发现化石人

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Anthropologists can learn something about the history of ancient peoples who have not left written records by studying the sagas that have been handed down from one generation of storytellers to another.
2. Ancient men preferred to use flint for making tools because it is easier to shape than other kinds of stone.

词汇练习参考答案

In most countries, the money to *preserve* ancient buildings and works of art comes from tourism, but tourism can also destroy the things we seek to *preserve*.

The children sat in a circle while the actor *recounted* the story of the beginning of the world.

These days, scientists can test their theories about the *migrations* of early peoples by looking at the geographical distribution of particular genetic types within modern populations.

Recently, *anthropologists* at the British Museum presented an exhibition about the ceremonies and traditions of the Mexican

Day of the Dead.

Rock and cave paintings made in the *remote* past have now been found in most parts of the world.

Left where they fall, dead trees gradually *decay*, providing a home for mushrooms and insects, so that the cycle of life begins again.

The painting was missing, and whoever had taken it had simply vanished *without trace*.

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. An *archaeologist* studies the remains left by people who lived long ago, such as their dwellings, their tools, their burials, so as to learn how and where they lived.

C. 1. The earliest *written records* we have come from the Near East, and are about 5,000 years old.

2. For the period before written records began, we have to rely on *sagas*, stories handed down orally from one generation to another.

3. *Stone tools* which, unlike wood and skins, do not decay, also provide evidence of our remote ancestors.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. We can use either a past participle construction: *tools made of stone*, or a relative clause: *which/who(m)* + *be* + past participle:

Tools (*which were*) *made of stone* were used for scraping and cutting.

Legends (*which have been*) *recorded* in the form of sagas

provide some information about the migrations of ancient peoples.

The remains (*which were*) *found* at the back of the cave were dated to about 20,000 years before the present.

B. 1. say 2. told 3. say 4. tell

C. We form phrasal verbs to express where something is obtained from: verb + object + *from*:

Do you mind my asking where you *got* it *from*?

I *bought* it *from* a second-hand shop in South London.

D. After *help* + object, we can use either the infinitive with *to* or the bare infinitive:

Would you mind *helping me to lift* this box, please?

The children *helped me make* the tree decorations.

E. See text.

F. 1. Your mother *may have called* when you were out.

2. You *may have left* your umbrella in the waiting room.

3. He *may have changed* his mind.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *Part* always refers to a part of a whole: *a part of a country*, *a part of the world*, *parts of this building*, etc. *Place* refers to location: *a place in town*, *a place on the shelf*, *places where things are kept*.

2. *History* is an objective account of a series of events: *the history of a country*, *a person's history*, *the history of our times*.

A *story* is an account, possibly fictional or partly so, told from the teller's own point of view: *a bedtime story*, *the story of my life*.

3. *Wonder* means 'ask oneself': *wonder what someone means*.

Wander means 'walk without paying attention to one's direction': *wander around the house/town, trying to decide what to do*.

4. *Like* (preposition) takes a direct object, which can be a noun (*like this job*), a pronoun (*like someone*), or a noun clause (*like what you do*).

As (adverb of manner or of comparison) introduces a clause and could be replaced with 'that which': *do as I say*, or 'in the way that': *think as you do*.

5. *Find out* means 'learn, discover information, and is often intransitive': *How did he find out (the truth/about this)?*

Find means 'come across or discover something that might be lost or not immediately available': *find a missing letter, find somewhere to stay*. We also use *find* to express an opinion based on experience: *I find it hard to understand him. I find it best to say nothing*.

6. *Ancient* means 'part of history': *ancient manuscripts, ancient customs* (and, giving exaggerated dignity to the idea of age, *ancient friendships*).

Old means 'not new': *old buildings, old friendships, old injuries*; and not young: *old people, old age*.

7. A *tool* is essentially an extension of the hand, and thus applies to processes that are mechanical: *a cutting tool, a polishing tool, a machine tool*.

一代接一代地将史实描述为传奇故事口传下来)",得知当时是靠讲故事的人才使得他们的历史得以流传,因此选项(c)passing knowledge of the past from one generation to another(将过去的事情一代一代地传下去)为正确项。讲故事并不是教人们写字,因此选项(a)teaching people how to write(教人们写字)为错误项。讲故事并不是仅仅让人们了解 5,000 年以前发生的事情,也不仅仅为了保存英雄故事,因此选项(b)和选项(d)都为错误项。

2. (a)

本题为推断题,课文第 1 段的后半部分提到 migrations of people who lived long ago(生活在很久以前的人们的迁居)以及 some of them came from Indonesia (他们中的一些人来自印度尼西亚)可以推断出选项(a)moved from one place to another(从一地移居到另一地)为正确项。古代人并不是都来自印度尼西亚,因此选项(b)came from Indonesia 为错误项。古代人并未为我们留下他们迁居的信息,也未保留他们的英雄故事和传说,因此选项(c)have left us information about their migrations(为我们留下了有关他们迁居的信息)和选项(d)preserved their sagas and legends(保留了他们的英雄故事和传说)为错误项。

3. (b)

根据课文第 5~6 行"Anthropologists wondered where the remote ancestors of the Polynesian peoples now living in the Pacific Islands came from(人类学家过去不清楚如今生活在太平洋诸岛上的波利尼西亚人的祖先来自何方)",得知选项(b)how the Polynesian Islands came to be inhabited(人们是如何定居在波利尼西亚诸岛上的)为正确项。选项(a)how Indonesia came to be inhabited(人们

是如何定居在印度尼西亚的)、选项(c) why the Polynesian people travelled from Indonesia(波利尼西亚人为什么从印度尼西亚出游)和选项(d)how the sagas told by ancient people were written(古人讲述的英雄故事是如何记载下来的)都与课文所述不符,为错误项。

4. (d)

根据课文第12~14行"Stone does not decay, and so the tools of long ago have remained when even the bones of the men who made them have disappeared without trace(石头不会腐烂,因此尽管制造这些工具的人的骨头早已荡然无存,但远古时代的石头却保存了下来)",得知选项(d)ancient tools made from stone(古老的石制工具)为正确项。人类学家根据石制工具了解许多古人的事情,而不是根据选项(a)materials that are easy to shape(易于成型的材料)或选项(b)the bones of men who made tools(制作工具的人的骨头)了解古人的事情。石头虽然不朽,但是不能给人们提供任何有关古人的事情,因此选项(c) stones that do not decay(不朽的石头)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

be unable to do sth. 意即"没有能力做某事",等于 cannot,因此选项(d)unable 为正确项。be incapable of doing sth. 等于 be unable to do sth., incapable 后面只能跟介词 of + doing sth.,而不能跟动词不定式。本题题干空白处后面跟的是动词不定式而不是介词 of,故选项(a)incapable 为错误项。选项(b)impotent 意即"不起作用的",故为错误项。选项(c)enable 为动词,意即"使能够",不能用于系动词 are 之后,也为错误项。

6. (b)

本题主要考查介词的使用。本题表达的是“通过什么手段保存历史”,应该用介词 by,此外介词后面只能跟动词的-ing 形式,而不能跟动词原形,故选项(b)by handing 为正确项,而选项(a)by hand 为错误项。选项(c)to hand 为动词不定式,所表达的是目的而不是方式,为错误项。选项(d)in hand 为搭配错误。

7. (d)

本题考查关系从句的先行词。关系副词为 why,那么其前的先行词应该是选项(d)reason,解释某事发生或存在的理由,如:I asked the reason for the decision.(我询问做出该项决定的原因。)选项(a)cause 表示导致某事发生的原因,如 the cause of explosion(爆炸原因)。选项(b)effect意即“结果”、“效果”,不能与 why 搭配。选项(c)why不能作先行词,又重复出现,故为错误项。

8. (a)

本句为否定句,在否定句中不定代词应该用 any,故选项(a)any 为正确项。句子中已经有了否定词 not,因此选项(b)none、选项(c)no one 和选项(d)no 都为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

本题考查动词和名词的搭配。英语中表达“讲故事”一般说 tell/narrate a story/stories,而不说 make a story 或 say a story,因此选项(a)tell 为正确项,选项(b)make和选项(c)say 为错误项。英语中也可以说 recount a story,但是较为正式,并侧重于指“详细描述”或“列举”,故选项(d)recount不为最佳选项。

10. (c)

该句要表达的是“记录”的意思,选项(c)record 即为此

义，因此为正确项。选项(a)make和选项(b)know都不是“记录”的意思，为错误项。选项(d)note意即“注意到”，如：We noted that she was late again.(我们注意到她又迟到了。)note也可以表示“记录”、“记下来”的意思，但需要用短语动词note down。

11. (a)

根据课文第6～7行“The sagas of these people explain that some of them came from Indonesia about 2,000 years ago(这些人们的英雄故事讲述了他们中的一些人是约在两千年以前从印度尼西亚迁来的)”，得知那些波利尼西亚人的祖籍是印度尼西亚，因此选项(a)origin(祖籍，血统)为正确项。

12. (b)

课文中用的是ancient men(古人)，那么4个选项中只有选项(b)men who lived long ago表达的是该意。选项(a)old men意即“老人”、“上年纪的人”。选项(c)men of old无此说法。选项(d)past men中的past指“过去的”，主要修饰物而不修饰人，如past business(过去的事务)。

Lesson 2
Spare that spider
不要伤害蜘蛛

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. We have reason to be grateful to insect-eating animals because insects include some of the greatest enemies of the human race.
2. We can tell the difference between a spider and an insect because a spider has eight legs, and an insect never has more than six.
3. 'One authority on spiders made a census in a grass field...' means that an expert on spiders formally counted how many spiders there were on a piece of ground covered with grass.

词汇练习参考答案

No matter how hard people work to *destroy* rat-populations, no human habitation is ever very far from a rat.
Brown locusts swarming at harvest time in Southern Africa can *devour* an entire nation's cereal crop in less than a week.
It was just the briefest possible hesitation, only a *fraction* of a second, but it was enough to show that he was lying.
The refugees abandoned their homes and all their *belongings* and fled for their lives.

The pilot *estimated* that the flight would take four hours and twenty minutes.

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

C. 1. I dislike finding spiders in the house because, unless I can pick them up and put them outside, I imagine them coming and walking across my face in the dark.

2. I like watching spiders spinning their webs because it always seems miraculous that anything so very small should be able to make such a large and complex structure so quickly.

3. I like the way that spiders will go on repairing their webs when these have been damaged by wind or by a large insect.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. *Why should he be* so disappointed?

2. *Why should you be* so unwilling to change your mind?

3. *Why should there be* so many traffic accidents?

B. 1. were 2. were 3. were

C. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *All of them together*: *all of* + pronoun or noun subject means 'every individual in the group'. *Together* is an adverb emphasizing the unity of the whole group: *All of the letters were posted together. All the children came*

out of school together.

Altogether is an adverb of degree meaning 'entirely, absolutely': *The two ideas are altogether separate. I'm not altogether surprised.*

2. We use *the other* to refer to the second of two things or groups: *This (one/book) is red; the other (one/book) is black.*

   Else, meaning 'additional, more or different', is especially common after indefinite pronouns: *someone/no one/anyone*, etc.: *Let somebody else do it.* We also use *else* after question words: *Who else is coming? Where else would you like to go?*

3. We use *the least* as an intensifier combining with adjectives to form negative superlatives: *the least able, the least intelligent*, etc. In this example, however, *the least* is a quantifier, and means 'the smallest amount of'. As a quantifier *the least* combines with uncountable nouns: *the least opportunity, the least money*. It also occurs in the adverb phrase *in the least*, meaning 'in the slightest degree': *I'm not in the least impressed.*

   The last means 'the final', as opposed to 'the first', 'the second', etc.: *the last emperor of China, the last time I saw you, the last person in the room*, etc.

4. *Harm* is either a noun meaning 'damage, negative effect': *He means no harm. He does no harm to anyone but himself*. Or it is a verb: *harm* + direct object, meaning 'cause damage to, affect negatively': *Pesticides harm the soil.*

   Hurt is a verb meaning 'cause mental or physical pain':

Remarks like that really hurt. I fell and hurt my back. We can also use it intransitively: *My back hurts*. i.e. It causes me pain.

5. *Glance* (noun) means 'a quick look'—that is a deliberate action, using the eyes consciously: *Take a glance at yourself in the mirror*. It is also a verb: *He glanced up*. i.e. He looked up.

   Glimpse (noun) is 'a quick involuntary sight': *I caught a glimpse of my reflection in the mirror*. i.e. I saw it fleetingly without intending to. *Glimpse* is also a verb: *I glimpsed him hurrying away*.

6. *Work* is uncountable, the act of working or the product of having worked: *I must do some work. My work involves a lot of entertaining*.

   Job is countable, either the task that one is paid for: *He has a job in a bank*; or a task that one does or may do: *It's a big job and will take at least two hours. He never does any household jobs if he can help it*.

7. *Estimate* (verb) is 'make an informed guess': *estimate the number of pages in this book, estimate the time needed to complete a job*, etc.

   Calculate is 'make an accurate assessment': *calculate how much time you have spent, calculate how many people were there*.

B. 1. obtain 2. bought 3. fetch 4. received
5. catch/hear 6. understand

C. 1. tell 2. telling 3. say 4. say 5. tell
6. said 7. tell

D. 1. made 2. do 3. do 4. made 5. made

6. made　7. do

E. 1. You can see *at a glance* that nothing has been done for weeks.

2. There are *at least* thirty people still missing after the floods.

3. We may miss the next bus, but *at any rate* we'll be there before midday.

4. They had to move house as quickly as possible, even if it meant selling *at a loss*.

5. When the auctioneer came, he offered to buy the vase straight away *at sight*.

6. No more than five people may be carried in this lift *at a time*.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 1～2 行和第 5～6 行"Because they destroy so many insects, and insects...(因为它们消灭那么多的昆虫……)"、"Moreover, unlike some of the other insect eaters, spiders never do the least harm to us or our belongings(此外,蜘蛛不同于其他食虫动物,他们丝毫不危害我们和我们的财物)",得知选项(b)destroy insects without hurting us in any way(消灭昆虫而对我们毫无伤害)为正确项。课文第 7 行中有"Spiders are not insects...(蜘蛛并不是昆虫……)",所以选项(a)are beneficial insects(是有益的昆虫)为错误项。蜘蛛本身是

own kind(不消灭自己的同类)为错误项。

4. (d)

根据课文第 11 ~ 12 行"Spiders are busy for at least half the year in killing insects(蜘蛛至少有半年的时间忙于吃昆虫)",得知选项(d)for a minimum of six months of each year(每年至少 6 个月的时间)为正确项。选项(a)all the time(一年到头)、选项(b)for most of the year(一年中大多数的时间)和选项(c)in the summer months(在夏季的月份)都与课文中所述不符,故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

本题是一个由先行词 it 引导的句子,该句的主语是 for us to live。这种结构多为"be + 形容词/名词 + (for + 人) + 动词不定式"形式,如:It's nice to talk to you.(同你谈话很好。)It's important (for you) to book in advance.(提前预定(对你)很重要。)因此选项(c)be 为正确项。其他 3 个选项在结构上都不合适,故均为错误项。

6. (a)

本题考查表示数量的代词的用法。课文中使用的 a lot 与选项(a)a great deal 在此都为代词,代替不可数名词,在句中作动词 owe 的宾语。选项(b)a lot of 只能用作形容词,后接单数不可数名词或复数可数名词。选项(c)a great many 只能用来代替可数名词,表示"很多的"人或物,而动词 owe 后面只能跟不可数名词或代词,故为错误项。选项(d)much of 后必须跟名词,为错误项。

7. (c)

be engaged in sth.表示"从事某事",与 be involved in sth.同义,故选项(c)in 为正确项。其他 3 项中的介词都不能与 be involved 搭配,故均为错误项。

8. (a)

sorts of 与 kinds of 同义，选项(a)sorts of 为正确项。选项(b)kind of 中的 kind 和选项(c)type of 中的 type 为单数，无法表示不同的种类，故均为错误项。选项(d)kinds后面不能直接跟名词，故为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

to defend sb. from sth. 表达"保护某人免受某事物的伤害"的意思，故选项(a)defend us from 为正确项。选项(b)guard 和选项(c)protect 均为"保护"的意思。蜘蛛消灭昆虫，而不是保护昆虫，因此为错误项。insure against 的意思是"为防……而给……保险"，如 insure one's home against loss from fire(给自己的房屋保火险)，故选项(d)insure us against 为错误项。

10. (d)

表达"与……相像"用 the same as，如：It is really just the same as any other police work.(它的确与任何其他的警察工作一样。)因此选项(d)the same as 为正确项。也可以用similar to 表达"与……相像"，如：It is similar to the rest of the field.(它与这片地的其余部分相同。)而选项(a)similar 中没有介词 to，故为错误项。be like 表示"与……相像"，后面直接跟名词，而选项(b)like to 中的介词to 多余，故为错误项。将某物或某人同另一物或另一人进行比较时不能用 as，而只能用 like，如：He swam like a fish.(他游起来像一条鱼。)因此选项(c)as 为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中说蜘蛛是吃不饱的动物，因此可以推断它们具有很大的食量。选项(b)appetites (食欲，胃口)所表达正是此义，故为正确项。选项(a)hunger(饥饿)、选项

(c)desires(欲望)和选项(d)eating(吃;食物)都不能表达食量很大的意思,故均为错误项。

12. (c)

蜘蛛不满足于一日3餐,选项(c)three times放入句子中表示蜘蛛喜欢一天不止吃3顿饭,因此为正确项。选项(a)three为数词,并不能表示"3次"的意思。选项(b)three time中的time虽表示次数,但应该用复数形式。选项(d)threes表示3个三,而不表示3次,因此为错误项。

Lesson 3
Matterhorn man
马特霍恩山区人

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The modern climber's attitude differs from that of the pioneer, in that the modern climber wants a route that will give him good sport, whereas the pioneer was only interested in getting to the top by the easiest route.
2. The three factors that made most Alpine villages inhospitable places were poverty, dirt and discomfort.

词汇练习参考答案

Chris Bonnington was the first person ever to reach the summit of the Eiger by a *route* that included the sheer North Face.

The chance to become well-educated is widely *regarded* as being the best opportunity a person can have.

Sir Edmund Hilary and Tenzing Norgay reached the *summit* of Mount Everest on May 29, 1952.

Various experts have *sought* an explanation for the strange lights seen occasionally in the sky in Western Scotland, but so far without success.

The prisoner *faced* her accusers in court with confidence.

Without her engines, and drifting towards the rocky shore, the

ship was in an increasingly *perilous* situation.

How is it that one nation will delight in eating delicacies that make another nation *shudder*?

Using a chain-saw without proper training and protective clothing is *courting* disaster.

This cup is the *solitary* survivor of my grandmother's set of twelve.

The wool from Herdwick sheep, a hardy mountain breed, is so *coarse*, it is mainly used for carpet-making.

The village had once *boasted* a school and a small general shop, but these had disappeared when the new road was built.

Friday is *invariably* the busiest day of the week on the roads.

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. I like mountaineering because I enjoy the space, the fresh air and the exercise.

One problem with so many people taking up mountaineering is that the paths up popular mountains are becoming as wide as roads, and erosion is scarring the mountainsides.

The experience of reaching the top of a high mountain and looking at the view for miles around is one of the best sensations in the world.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. The more *expensive petrol becomes*, the less *people drive*.

2. The more *you try to explain*, the worse *your situation becomes*.

3. The sooner *I finish this job*, the better *I shall feel*.

B. See text.

C. 1. (*Often*) I am (*often*) in such a hurry (*often*), I (*often*) don't (*often*) have time for breakfast (*often*).

2. We (*often*) buy things we (*often*) don't really need (*often*).

3. He is (*often*) sent abroad (*often*) by his firm (*often*).

D. 1. It was impossible for them *to avoid getting wet*.

2. It is difficult *to say the right thing when people are grieving*.

3. It is easy for you *to be cheerful about it, but it was my money*.

E. 1. I always find it impossible to refuse *such requests*.

2. *Such freedom* must be balanced by personal responsibility.

3. I had not expected to encounter *such difficulty*.

4. *Such films* as were completed at that time were interesting only in terms of photographic technique.

F. 1. I am used to *the baby's waking me in the middle of the night*.

2. Do you object to my *opening the window for a little while*?

3. I am looking forward to *seeing you on the 23rd*.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *Situation* means 'position': *In your situation, I would have done exactly as you did*.

Case means 'a particular instance': *In a case like this one, the court usually awards custody to the mother*.

2. We do not use either *specially* or *especially* at the beginning of a sentence. To express 'more than usually', either word is possible: *I think you'll find this article specially/especially interesting.*

But *specially*, not 'especially', means 'for a particular purpose': *I had this desk specially made to suit my height.*

And *especially*, not 'specially', means 'in particular': *I (especially) wanted to see that production of 'Taking Sides' (especially).*

3. *Realize* means 'become aware of': *I realized at once what you meant*; or 'be aware of': *I don't think you realize the seriousness of your situation.*

Understand means 'comprehend': *I understand what you mean.*

In these meanings, both verbs are usually stative, and thus are not usually used in progressive (or 'continuous') tenses.

4. Both *except* and *except for* mean 'with the exception of', and are used especially after *every/any/no-* compounds: *Everyone except (for) you has already signed the photo.*

Only *except for* can be used at the beginning of a sentence: *Except for last year's party, the summer party has always been out of doors.*

And only *except* in front of a prepositional phrase: *Except in his first job, he had always enjoyed what he did.*

5. We pronounce both *coarse* and *course* in exactly the

same way.

Coarse means 'rough, not fine': *coarse salt*, *coarsely-chopped onion*, *coarse speech*, *a coarse joke*.

We use *course* to refer to a phase in a meal: *the first course*, *the meat course*, *a sweet course*, etc.

Course also means 'pathway or direction': *the course we have followed*, *a racecourse*, *the course of a river*; or it means 'a series of lessons': *I've signed up for a course in navigation*.

6. A *house* is a building for one family to live in. (Buildings divided up into flats for more than one family are known as 'blocks of flats or apartment blocks', not 'houses'.) *Their house is only five minutes from the station*.

   A *house* or flat becomes a *home* when you refer to it as the place you live in: *Are you going home now? Is your father at home?* or the place you belong to: *Home is where the heart is*.

B. 1. They did not *make any special effort to court such excitement*.

2. Please ask him to *move to where he will not cause an obstruction*.
3. The cottage was *remote from the main thoroughfares*.
4. The table is *inconveniently located*.
5. I'll call in *when I am passing from one place to the other*.
6. We must do this exercise *as/in the manner* we have been taught.

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 1～2 行"Modern alpinists try to climb mountains by a route which will give them good sport, and the more difficult it is, the more highly it is regarded(现代登山运动员总想找一条能够给他们带来运动乐趣的路线攀登山峰。他们认为道路愈艰险愈带劲儿)",得知选项(c)prefer difficult climbs to easy ones(喜欢艰难的攀登而不喜欢容易的攀登)为正确项。早期登山者喜欢寻找通向山顶容易的道路,而不是现代的登山者,因此选项(a)like to find the easiest way to the top of a mountain(喜欢寻找通向山顶最容易的路)为错误项。课文中说现代登山者喜欢给他们带来运动乐趣的路线,而不是说他们喜欢运动,因此选项(b)like sport(喜欢运动)为错误项。选项(d)always follow a particular route(总是沿着一条特定的路线)在课文中并未提到,故为错误项。

2. (a)

该题考查推断能力。根据课文的陈述得知,现代登山运动员更具冒险精神,因此选项(a)enjoy testing themselves on difficult climbs(乐于以艰难的攀登考验自己)为正确项。选项(b)avoid dangerous situations(避免危险的境况)与他们的冒险精神不符。课文中说早期登山者简陋的装备足以让现代登山者一想起来就胆战心惊,因此选项(c) are not as well equipped as earlier climbers(装备不如早期的登山者)是错误项。课文中说是早期的登山者寻求的目标是登上顶峰,而不是现代的登山者,因此选项(d)are

误项。前面已经提到要适应阿尔卑斯山山区的生活很困难,因此选项(b)didn't mind uncomfortable conditions(不在乎不舒适的环境)为错误项。课文中已经谈到"climbers found shelter wherever they could—sometimes with the local priest(登山者在任何能找到的地方住下来——有时同当地的牧师住在一起)"(第12~13行),而不是总是同牧师住在一起,因此选项(c)always found accommodation with the local priest(总是同当地的牧师住在一起)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (a)

本题考查关系代词的用法。该句中的先行词是summits,其后的定语从句修饰该词,选项(a)which为正确项,which在从句中作主语,代替名词summits。选项(b)which they中的they多余,关系代词which本身就在从句中作主语。选项(c)that they中的they多余,关系代词that本身就在从句中作主语。选项(d)unless they引导的是一个让步状语从句,所表达的意思与课文所表达的意思不符,因此为错误项。

6. (c)

本题考查代词的用法。根据句子结构,这里应该用物主代词their修饰single aim,表示"他们的惟一目的",因此选项(c)Their为正确项。选项(a)They're为They are的缩略形式,句子中已经有了系动词was,在结构上就不应再用are,且语义也讲不通,因此为错误项。选项(b)There和选项(d)Theirs在结构上均不正确。

7. (d)

except和apart from都可以用来表示"除去"、"减去"的意思,如:I like all musical instruments except the violin.(我

喜欢小提琴以外的任何乐器。）I like all musical instruments apart from the violin.（除小提琴以外我喜欢任何乐器。）在作一般性陈述时，如句子中含有 all、every、no、everything、anybody、nowhere、whole 等词时均可用 except 或 except for，如：I ate everything on his plate except (for) the beans.（除去豆子之外，我吃掉了他盘子里所有的东西。）但是如果后面有否定词时，只能用 except for，如：Except for John and Mary, nobody came.（除了约翰和玛丽，没人来。）因此选项(d)Apart from 为正确项，而选项(a)Except 为错误项。选项(b)Unless和选项(c)Without在语义和结构上均不正确。

8. (a)

课文中使用的是表示存在的 there be 结构："Such inns *as there were*...（那里有的这样的小客栈……）"（第 10 行）最能准确传达此义的选项是(a)The few inns that existed（那儿存在的几个小客栈）。其他 3 项都未能准确地传达此义，故均为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中出现的是"...this was not the case at all.（……全然不是这种情况）"（第 2 行），选项(b)situation（情形，情况）与 case 同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)condition（条件）、选项(c)history（历史）和选项(d)event（事件）所表达的意思都与该处的 case 不符，故均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的形容词 perilous 意即"危险的"，选项(a)dangerous（危险的）与其同义。选项(b)dreadful（可怕的，令人敬畏的）、选项(c)extreme（极端的）和选项(d)pitiful（可怜的）的词义均与 perilous 不同。

11. (c)

课文中使用的是形容词 coarse(粗劣的),选项(c)rough(粗糙的,粗制的)与其同义。选项(a)course(过程;科目)与 coarse 形似,但词性和词义完全不同。选项(b)sour(酸的)和选项(d)new(新的)与 coarse 不同义。

12. (d)

课文中使用的是动词 boast,该词原义是"自夸"、"自吹自擂",但在课文中所表达的只是"(自豪地)拥有"的意思,因此选项(d)possessed(拥有)为正确项。选项(a)was proud of(为……而骄傲)、选项(b)advertised(宣传)和选项(c)showed(展现)都与原文所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

Lesson 4
Seeing hands
能看见东西的手

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Vera's father discovered his daughter's curious talent when she showed she could tell what was inside a locked safe in his office by putting her hands on the door.
2. She was unable to perceive objects with her skin unless she was blindfold.
3. She lost the ability to perceive objects with her fingers as soon as her hands were wet.

词汇练习参考答案

I have spoken to her on *several* occasions.

You can buy an electronic device that will *detect* electric cables hidden in walls through the plaster.

My father's *vision* was remarkably good until he was 88, when he developed cataracts.

She was one of those people who pretend to *perceive* the innermost soul of everyone they meet.

This is a *curious* business, and I have no more idea than you do how it will end.

There had been a *series* of wet days, and it felt as if it would go

on raining for ever.

At the top of the hill, there was a row of trees, their winter *outlines* dark against the sky.

We had already met once before at a neighbour's house on *a similar* occasion.

Erica had *ceased* to worry about her appearance when she moved to the country.

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

C. 1. Vera Petrova has the unusual ability of being able to use her hands to perceive things through solid walls and in locked containers.

2. During a series of tests, she showed that she could detect printed shapes and colours on a Lotto board with her elbow.

3. She also managed to make out with her foot the outline of a picture hidden underneath a carpet.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. I asked him *when he bought that car*.

2. I asked him *where he found that book*.

3. I asked him *why he sent a fax*.

4. I asked him *how he knew I was here*.

5. I asked him *which one he liked best*.

C. 1. getting 2. arriving 3. trying 4. persuading

D. 1. could 2. could 3. was able to

4. was able to　　5. was able to

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *Normal* means 'standard, exactly as you'd expect': *He grew up in a normal household, just a normal, healthy, reasonably happy child.*

Though *normal* and *ordinary* can seem to be interchangeable, *ordinary* means 'simple, not fancy, not special': *Can I go to the party in my ordinary office clothes? Monday was just like any other ordinary working day.*

2. Both *skin* and *complexion* can be used to refer to the colour and quality of facial skin: *He has an olive complexion/skin*; though *complexion* is the more exact term, and is preferable in formal contexts.

Only *skin* is used to mean 'the outer covering of the body': *The skin ages in response to sunlight.*

3. *Notice* means 'see and become aware of': *Have you noticed that truck at the end of the road?*

Remark means 'comment, say': '*The weather's improved,*' *she remarked*. *Remark* meaning 'see' is archaic.

4. An *office* is a room or a building where business is carried out: *I got to the office at nine.*

A *study* is a place in someone's home used for domestic paperwork and private study: *You'll find it on the desk in my study.*

5. A *game* is an activity with rules that people play: *a game of cards, a game of football, a game of chance.*

It is also the board and pieces for such an activity: *a game of Monopoly, a board-game.*

A *toy* is an item that someone plays with in his/her own way, and without external rules: *a toy train, a toy car: You can't treat children as if they were toys or dolls and just put them back in the cupboard when you're tired!*

6. *Lack* means 'not have enough': *Lots of children lack the opportunity to learn a foreign language.*

   Need means 'require': *How much time will you need?*

7. *Wet* is the opposite of 'dry': *wet weather, wet grass, wet paint*, etc.

   Damp means 'very slightly wet', often in a negative or unpleasant way: *a damp house, damp clothes, damp logs that won't burn.*

B. 1. tied　　2. as good as dead　　3. finished
   4. decorated it　　5. cheated me out of

C. 1. numbers　　2. shape/outline
   3. the shape of the body

D. 1. perceive　　2. ran away　　3. understand him
   4. transferred　　5. inventing

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 1~2 行"Several cases have been reported in

Russia recently of people who can read and detect colours with their fingers, and even see through solid doors and walls(俄罗斯最近报道了几个事例,有人能用手指看书识字和辨认颜色,甚至能透过厚实的门和墙看到东西)",得知选项(a)no obstacle for people who can read and detect colours with their fingers(对那些能用手指阅读和辨别颜色的人来说并不是什么障碍)为正确项。课文中讲述的是那些人能透过墙和门看东西,并不是说他们看不到门和墙,因此选项(b)invisible to people who can read and detect colours with their fingers(那些能用手指阅读和辨别颜色的人看不见)为错误项。文中说他们能透过门和墙看到东西,但并未说对他们来说门和墙是透明的,因此选项(c)transparent to people who can read and detect colours with their fingers(对那些能用手指阅读和辨别颜色的人来说是透明的)为错误项。选项(d)concerned in cases reported in Russia recently(与最近俄罗斯报道的事件有关)与课文所述不符,故为错误项。

2. (c)

根据课文所述,维拉的特异功能是她在父亲的办公室突然说出锁着的保险柜里放的东西时她父亲才偶然发现的,因此选项(c)discovered his daughter's gift by accident(偶然发现他女儿的天赋)为正确项。选项(a)had always known his daughter had this talent(一直知道他女儿的这个才能)并不是事实,故为错误项。是后来的实验发现她身体的其他部位也具有这种能力,因此选项(b)found that his daughter could perceive things with different parts of her skin(发现他女儿能够用不同部位的皮肤看出东西)为错误项。是维拉向她父亲描述报纸捆扎的情况,因此选项(d)described the way newspapers were done up in

bundles(描述报纸捆扎的情况)为错误项。

3. (c)

本题的答案需要动脑筋才能找到。选项(a)是一系列测试中的一个项目,不全面,因此为错误项。选项(d)中提到的 a game of Lotto 只是测试中的一种工具,因此也为错误项。选项(c)tested Vera thoroughly 与事实不符,因为测试是由卫生部的一个特别委员会主持的。而位于乌里扬诺夫斯克的科研单位只是为这一系列测试作了安排,因此选项(b)arranged that Vera should undergo a number of experiments 为正确项。

4. (a)

课文中说,当维拉眼睛不被蒙上时,或者她的手是湿的时候,她的特异功能就消失了,因此选项(a)Vera couldn't always perceive things with her skin(维拉并不总能用皮肤看到东西)为正确项。维拉在接受测试时总是被蒙上眼睛,因此选项(b)Vera was occasionally blindfold when she did the tests(维拉有时在被测试时被蒙上眼睛)为错误项。维拉在手湿的时候就失去看东西的能力,因此选项(c)Vera's hands had to be wet before she could perceive things through her skin(维拉在用皮肤看东西之前她的手必须是湿的)为错误项。课文中的第 12～13 行"Other experiments showed that her knees and shoulders had a similar sensitivity(其他实验表明她的膝盖和双肩具有类似的感觉能力)",证明选项(d)Vera's knees didn't have the same sensitivity as her fingers(维拉的膝盖没有她的手指所具有的那种类似的感觉能力)是错误的。

Structure 句型

5. (b)

本题考查关系代词。先行词是 people,关系代词 that 既

(好像)作连词,引导方式状语从句,而不是条件状语从句。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

课文中使用的动词为 notice(注意),选项(a)observed 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)remarked(评论,谈论)、选项(c)regarded(看成,注视)和选项(d)acknowledged(承认)所表达的意思都与 notice 不同,故均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的名词是 notice,意即"注意",选项(a)attention与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)observation(观察,观测)、选项(c)regard(考虑,关心)和选项(d)care(小心,关心)所表达的意思均与 notice 不同。

11. (b)

本题所表达的是她能用脚看到颜色。动词 see 表示"用眼睛看到或注意到",如:We suddenly saw a boat.(我们突然看到一只船。)因此选项(b)see 为正确项。颜色既不能"画"又不能"理解",因此选项(a)draw(画)和选项(c)understand(理解)为错误项。选项(d)watch 为"观看"、"注视"的意思,如:He watched the panda with interest.(他饶有兴趣地观看那只熊猫。)本题表达的是"看"的能力,而不是"观看"什么,因此此为错误项。

12. (d)

课文中使用的动词是 cease,表示"停止"、"终止"的意思,与 stop 同义,故选项(d)stopped 为正确项。选项(a)continued(继续)和选项(b)renewed(恢复,重新开始)与 ceased 的意思正好相反。选项(c)increased(增长)与 ceased 意思不同。

Lesson 5
Youth
青年

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The writer says that the one difference between an old man and a young man is that a young man can look forward to a glorious future, and an old man can only remember his splendid past.
2. The writer would have been pleased to have been regarded as a problem when he was young because it would have given him a more interesting identity, which was one thing he felt he lacked.
3. The author particularly admires the air of freedom that young people have, their unconcern about being successful and comfortable, and their lack of anxiety about status and possessions.

词汇练习参考答案

When a literary genius *creates* a great novel, one cannot explain it by looking at the writer's life.

In some ways, modern *teenagers* need more protection than we did when we were in our teens.

After the old lady became ill, her daughter cared for her with

real *devotion* until her death.

There is plenty of evidence to *link* this particular person with the scene of the crime.

Scientists hope that new telescopes in space will finally reveal the *origins* of the universe.

We had *dreary* weather on the trip—grey skies and plenty of drizzly rain.

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

C. 1. Adolescents are often loud and rough, especially when they are in groups.

2. Their behaviour can be so unpredictable that other people sometimes feel threatened.

3. Most adolescents think they know all the answers to everything, and they think their elders are stupid not to see things their way.

D. 1. Adults think they always know best, even about things that they have no experience of.

2. They're always critical or disapproving of whatever we do or say, and they don't take us seriously.

3. They're quite hypocritical, because they forbid us to do things that they do all the time.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. He'*s always changing* his mind. He *always changes* his arrangements at the last minute.

I'*m always making* mistakes like this. I *always make* a

point of asking after his family.

People *are always telling* us about things that are bad for our health. We *always tell* our children to come straight home from school.

Everybody'*s always asking* about you. My father *always asks* how you're getting on.

B. Only *the rich* can afford to live in that part of town. He must be *a rich man* to live in that part of town.

Caring for *the sick* requires a special kind of temperament. He had been *a sick man* for years.

Uneven pavements and illegal parking make it difficult for *the blind* to go around safely in our city. *A blind man* will often carry a white stick to warn others that he can't see.

They say you should never speak ill of *the dead*. Responding to an anonymous call, the police found *a dead man* in the park.

C. 1. You would not like *to be accused* of theft.

2. I was astonished *to be told* that all the tickets had been sold.

3. I expect *to be informed* about it tomorrow.

D. 1. It is not very pleasant *having* to write so many letters.

2. *Expecting* others to help you and then *not helping* them in return is hardly commendable.

3. It is very enjoyable *teaching* young children.

E. 1. He *delighted* in music/that/playing the piano.

2. Can I *interest* you in this idea/this/joining us?

3. I wish he wouldn't *persist* in such folly/this/misbehaving in class.

4. Do you *believe* in such things/them/trying to change the

system?

F. 1. He doesn't know. There is*n't any* point in asking him.

2. You'll pass your driving test if you do*n't* make *any* mistakes.

3. I do*n't* have *any* faith in him.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. We cannot use *than* after *elder*: *John is older than I am.* We cannot use *elder* for things: *Which building is older?*

Use either form when comparing two people: *Who is the older/elder?* We use *elder* in front of a noun when referring to two people in a defined group, such as in a family: *My elder/older brother is a doctor.*

2. *Agree with*: *I agree with you when you say that something must be done.*

Accept + direct object: *I accept your point that something must be done.*

Agree + *to*-infinitive: *I agreed to go with him.*

But we use a noun clause, not a *to*-infinitive, after *accept*: *I accept that these things happen.*

3. *Between* two: *That daft dog hasn't got much brain between his ears.*

Among more than two: *Monet's work is scattered among the many great art galleries of the world.*

4. *Please* means 'give pleasure': *It pleased me very much to be offered a higher salary.*

Beg means 'ask very earnestly', often followed by a *to*-infinitive: *I beg you to think again.*

Also *beg for*: *The prisoner begged for a visit from his wife*.

5. *Regard* means 'look on, consider to be, believe to be' and is generally followed by *as* + noun or *-ing* phrase: *I regard punctuality as (being) the most basic politeness. Many people regard Mozart as (being) the most perfect composer*.

   Look at means 'view': *If you look at the situation from her point of view, you will see things differently. The image changes depending on where you look at it from*.

6. *Be interesting to* often (though not invariably) has an impersonal subject and a personal object: *Art galleries are not very interesting to most children*.

   Be interested in often (though not invariably) has a personal subject, and, very likely, an impersonal object: *Most children are not very interested in art galleries*. But note: *Someone of my age is hardly very interesting to a young person like you. Children often become less interested in their grandparents in their teens*.

7. *Exciting*: *Young people are exciting*. (That is the effect they have on others.)

   Excited: *The writer is excited by young people*. (That is the effect they have on him.) *Excited* combines with *be*, *get*, *feel*, *become*, etc.: *Now, kids, don't get too excited*.

8. *Reason* means 'explanation or justification', is normally followed by *for*: *This is the reason for my asking you in*

particular, or by a *that*-clause: *This is the reason that I have asked you in particular*, or by a *to*-infinitive: *This is no reason to quarrel with someone.*

Cause means 'the thing that makes something happen', is normally followed by *of*: *These changes are the cause of all this trouble.*

B. 1. doing (*getting up to* suggests mischievous activity)

2. overcome

3. move from one place to another

4. recovered from

5. escape penalty

6. be excused from (an unwelcome task)

C. 1. It seems *ill-advised* to sell the house now when the market is so depressed.

2. The children should not be out on the moor so *ill-protected* from the weather.

3. Blaze was an *ill-tempered* horse with a hard mouth and a tendency to kick.

4. The *ill-fated* fishing boat, the *Sapphire*, went down with the loss of four men.

5. I understand that he didn't mean to be unkind, but I still feel *ill-used*.

6. Jennifer considers the children to be *ill-bred* because they are careless about thanking her for her presents.

7. It was a stupid thing to do, but it was *ill-natured* of them to tell us so.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第3~5行"There is only one difference between an old man and a young one: the young man has a glorious future before him and the old one has a splendid future behind him(老年人和青年人只有一个区别：青年人有光辉灿烂的前景，而老年人的辉煌已经成为过去)"，得知选项(c)Old people have a past; young people have a future(老年人有的是过去；年轻人有的是未来)为正确项。选项(a)Old people think of the young as 'a problem'(老年人认为年轻人是个"问题")、选项(b)Old people create this 'problem' of age difference(老年人造成了这个年龄差别"问题")和选项(d)Old people and young people forget they are all human beings(老年人和青年人忘记了他们都是人)都不是老年人和年轻人的主要区别，因此均为错误项。

2. (a)

根据课文第7~9行"For one thing, being a problem gives you a certain identity, and that is one of the things the young are busily engaged in seeking(首先，成为一个问题，至少使你得到某种承认，这正是年轻人热衷追求的)"，得知年轻人想做的事情之一就是得到承认，明白自己是什么人，因此选项(a)find out who they are(明白他们是谁)为正确项。年轻人并不是真正想成为"一个问题"，而真正的目的是得到人们的承认，因此选项(b)make sure they become 'a problem'(确保他们成为"一个问题")为错误

项。正是因为对自己把握不准，年轻人才希望人们把他们看成“一个问题”，以得到人们的承认，而不是他们想对自己把握不准，因此选项（c）feel uncertain about themselves（对自己把握不准）为错误项。选项（d）feel they are in a huge school（觉得自己身处一个大学校里）并不是他们想要做的事情。

3．(b)

课文第3段特别是第12～13行“It's as if they were, in some sense, cosmic beings in violent and lovely contrast with us suburban creatures（从某种意义上讲，他们似乎是宇宙人，同我们这些凡夫俗子形成了强烈而鲜明的对照）”，描述年轻人不追逐名利，不贪图享乐，与老年人的生活态度截然不同，从而得知选项（b）don't see life in the same way their elders do（看待生活的方式与长者不同）为正确项。本文的作者并不真正认为年轻人狂妄自负、举止无理或愚昧无知，而恰恰相反，他认为年轻人和老年人是平等的，因此选项（a）are conceited, ill-mannered or fatuous（狂妄自负、举止无理或愚昧无知）为错误项。选项（c）don't have any ambitions（没有任何追求）与课文所述不符，文中说他们不追求名利，不贪图享乐，并不等于说他们没有任何追求，故该项为错误项。作者说年轻人像是宇宙人，未受现实社会的污染，而并不是说他们来自另一个星球，因此选项（d）come from another planet（来自另一个星球）为错误项。

4．(a)

从课文第14～15行“...but I do not turn for protection to dreary clichés about respect for elders—as if mere age were a reason for respect（……但我不会用应当尊重长者这一套陈词滥调来为我自己辩护，似乎年长就是受人尊重的

8. (c)

课文中使用的是情态助动词 may，表示“可能”，选项(c)possible表示“可能的”，因此为正确项。选项(a)necessary(必须的)和选项(b)permissible(允许的)均为错误项。选项(d)likely 表示“极可能要发生”，而 may 则具有“有可能但并不十分确切”的含义，故该项为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中使用的名词 fundamentals 意即“基本原则”，选项(b)basics 与其同义。选项(a)what is needed(所需的事情)、选项(c)the end(末尾)以及选项(d)the bottom(最深处)均与 fundamentals 不同义。

10. (b)

课文中使用的名词 rub 意即“难题”，选项(b)problem 与其同义。选项(a)wound(伤口)、选项(c)hurt(伤害)以及选项(d)injury(伤害)均与 rub 不同义。

11. (d)

课文中使用的 seeking(追求)与选项(d)looking for(找寻，追寻)同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)looking at(看，注视)、选项(b)looking to(依靠，期待)和选项(c)looking over(查看)均与 seeking 不同义。

12. (d)

课文中使用的短语 All that is in my mind(脑子里就想到这些)与选项(d)think about(想到，考虑到)所表达的意思相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)am annoyed with(烦恼的)、选项(b)care about(关心)和选项(c)object to(反对)均与课文所述意义不同，故均为错误项。

Lesson 6
The sporting spirit
体育的精神

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. International sporting contests lead to orgies of hatred because nearly all sports nowadays are competitive: you must do your utmost to win.
2. When they watch international sporting contests, spectators believe that the different sports are tests of national virtue.

词汇练习参考答案

I was *amazed* when she told me she was 15. I thought she was about 20.

If there's enough *goodwill* on both sides, we should be able to solve the dispute.

I have no *inclination* to spend my holidays at home doing nothing.

From all the clues, the detective was able to *deduce* who had committed the murder.

You must do your *utmost* to make sure that everyone has all the details of the conference weekend.

Whatever you may think, there is still a lot of *prestige* attached to being a doctor or a lawyer.

The man felt completely *disgraced* when his teenage son was arrested.

What was *significant* about the man's behaviour was that it was out of character.

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

C. See text.

D. The author clearly thinks that competitive sports, especially at an international level, are little more than mock warfare and that they are dangerous to both players and spectators.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. you will probably play with a lot of aggression

2. go out every evening, we would go to our favourite restaurant

3. had more time

4. practise every day

B. 1. makes　2. stop　3. arrives　4. stops　5. move

C. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *Hear* means 'receive sounds through your ears': *Speak up. I can't hear what you're saying.*

Listen means 'give attention while hearing': *I like listening to jazz.*

2. We use *even* (adverb) to express something unexpected or surprising: *Even the younger children enjoyed the*

concert, so I'm sure the older ones did too.

Still (adverb) means 'up to now and at this moment': *She's still watching the film, so I suppose she's enjoying it.* It can also mean 'in spite of that', as in: *I know he's admitted putting the money back, but that still doesn't explain how it came to be missing in the first place.*

3. The verb *lead* means 'go first and show the way': *She led us to the small church by the lake.*

   The verb *guide* means 'go with someone to show them the way and explain things': *The woman guided us around the big house.*

4. *Principle* and *principal*: these two nouns are pronounced exactly the same, but the meanings are completely different.

   A *principle* is a basic rule: *It's one of my principles never to lend my car to anyone.*

   A *principal* is the head of a school or college: *He has just become principal of the local college.*

   The adjective *principal* means 'highest in importance, chief, main', as in: *His principal source of income comes from acting.*

5. The words *practise* and *practice* are often confused. They are both pronounced in the same way.

   However, in British English, *practise* is the verb, and *practice* is the noun: *He practises the piano for two hours a day. The basketball practice lasted two hours.*

   In American English, *practice* is both a noun and a verb.

6. In the context of sport, you can *win* a game, a match, a competition, a prize, etc.: *Our team won a silver cup.*

   Beat means 'defeat, or do better than' an opponent: *She always beats me at chess.*

   Look: Our team *beat* the best team in France to *win* the competition.

   However, *win* (not *beat*) can also be used intransitively: *Who won? Tottenham won.*

7. *Lose* /lu:z/ is a verb which means, in the text, 'not win': *Our football team lost again last Saturday.*

   Loose /lu:s/ is an adjective which means 'not firmly fixed': *The screws holding the shelf brackets are very loose. Can you tighten them?*

8. *Arise* is an intransitive verb meaning 'happen, occur, come into being': *An unexpected difficulty has arisen which will necessitate a change of plan.*

   Arouse is a transitive verb meaning 'cause to become active': *The children's behaviour at the back of the class aroused the curiosity of the teacher.* (*Arouse* meaning 'wake someone up' is very formal.)

9. A *level* is a position of height in relation to a flat surface, literally or figuratively: *The top of the mountain is at least a kilometre above sea level. This question will have to be discussed at the highest level.*

   As a noun, and compared with *level*, *flat* means 'ground level': *That horse is a good runner on the flat.*

B. The word *people* can be used in two ways.

As a plural noun it means 'persons, human beings': *Most*

people seem to like her.

However, as a countable noun, a *people* means 'a race, nation' — so plural *peoples* in the sentence means 'races, nations'.

There were about 600 *people* at the concert.

If only the *peoples* of the world all spoke the same language!

C. 1. the four o'clock train　　2. the 1937 edition

3. The 1944 Education Act　　4. The 1917 revolution

D. *One* and *you* can both be used as an indefinite pronoun meaning 'everyone/anyone' in general statements.

One is formal, while *you* is informal and preferred in everyday speech.

One might try to discover more about the project before investing money.

Whichever supermarket you go into nowadays, you'll find basically the same things.

E. 1. for enjoyment　　2. pleasure, amusement

3. without meaning any harm　　4. laughed at/ridiculed

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

本题考查读者的推测能力。根据课文第1～3行"I am always amazed when I hear people saying that sport creates goodwill between the nations, and that if only the common peoples of the world could meet one another at football or

cricket, they would have no inclination to meet on the battlefield(当我听人们说体育运动可创造国家之间的友谊,还说各国民众若在足球场上交锋就不愿在战场上残杀的时候,我总是惊愕不已)",可以推测出作者对该说法持怀疑态度,因此选项(c)sport makes war less likely(运动使战争不太可能发生)为正确项。选项(a)people enjoy sport(人们喜欢运动)并不是令作者产生怀疑的假设。选项(b)there are general principles governing sport(对运动有总的原则)和选项(d)sport is enjoyed by common people(运动得到大众的喜欢)也都不是某种假设,因此也为错误项。

2. (a)

本题考查对作者观点的把握能力。根据课文第6~7行"Nearly all the sports practised nowadays are competitive. You play to win, and the game has little meaning unless you do your utmost to win(现在开展的体育运动几乎都是竞争性的。参加比赛就是为了取胜;如果不拼命去赢,比赛就没有意义了)",可以判断作者的观点是体育运动就是要获胜,要战胜对手,因此选项(a) beating your opponent(击败对手)为正确项。作者认为只要一涉及到名誉,体育运动就不可能仅仅是为了锻炼和娱乐,因此选项(b)getting plenty of exercises(得到充分的锻炼)和选项(c)having fun(得到娱乐)为错误项。选项(d)doing your best(竭尽全力)并不是目的,因此为错误项。

3. (c)

根据课文第9行"as soon as you feel that you and some larger unit will be disgraced if you lose(一旦你想到你和你的团体会因你输了而丢脸时)",可以得知选项(c)shame(丢脸)为正确项。选项(a)patriotism(爱国主义)用于此

处，既不合逻辑又与课文所述不符。课文中说一旦你因为输了而丢脸时，会被激发出最野蛮的争斗天性，而不是feel savage(觉得野蛮)，因此选项(b)savage(野性的)为错误项。文中说会激发出最野蛮的争斗天性，而不是更具斗志，因此选项(d)even more competitive(更具斗志)为错误项。

4. (c)

课文第 11 行"At the international level, sport is frankly mimic warfare(在国际比赛中，体育简直是一场模拟战争)"，将国际比赛比作模拟战争。选项(c)nations appear to be at war with one another(各国似乎处于争战状态)为正确项，其中的动词 appear 表示"看上去像"，与动词 seem 同义，但较 seem 正式，如：Their offer appears to be the most attractive.(他们提供的东西似乎最为吸引人。)运动员并非在打仗，因此选项(a)the players are at war with each other(运动员在互相打仗)为错误项。观众并不能参加比赛，因此选项(b)the spectators take part in the sporting contests(观众参加体育竞赛)为错误项。作者在文中讽刺说参赛的国家甚至煞有介事地相信运动是对品德素养的检验，而并非真正相信运动能体现一个国家的品德，因此选项(d)sport brings out the best qualities in a nation(运动体现出一个国家的最佳品质)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

课文中使用的助动词 could 表示某种不可能实现的可能性，为虚拟语气用法。该题中使用了形容词 possible，表示"可能"，无需再使用任何助动词。因为原文里使用的是虚拟语气，这里也应使用虚拟语气。故选项(c)it were 为正确项，而其他 3 个选项均为错误项。

6. (a)

课文中使用动词不定式作目的状语，in order 后用动词不定式也可以作目的状语，故选项(a)in order to 为正确项。选项(b)in order that 和选项(c)so that 后面应该引导目的状语从句，而不是单个的动词，故为错误项。选项(d)for为介词，其后只能跟名词而不应是动词，故为错误项。

7. (a)

课文中使用的是 where 引导的非限制性定语从句，修饰 the village green。在本题中 place 作先行词，省略了引导定语从句的 where。当 where 用于 somewhere、anywhere、everywhere、nowhere 和 place 后时，可以用 that 替代，也可以省略，如：We need a place (that) we can stay for a few days.(我们需要一个能呆几天的地方。)因此选项(a)the place 为正确项。the village green 表示地点，而不是时间，因此选项(b)the time 为错误项。the village green 并不是组队的原因，故选项(c)the reason 为错误项。同样 the village green 也不是导致组队的因素，故选项(d)the cause 为错误项。

8. (a)

本子句是一个时间状语从句，课文中使用的是 as soon as，而 the moment (that)(一……就)也可以引导一个时间状语从句，故选项(a)The moment 为正确项。选项(b)Just 为副词，不能引导从句。选项(c)As long as(只要)引导条件状语从句。选项(d)Providing(假若)引导条件状语从句。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的名词是 inclination(意愿)，选项(d)desire

Lesson 7
Bats
蝙蝠

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The echo-location principle is applied to measure the depth of the sea by measuring the time interval between sounds on the surface and their echoes from the sea bottom.
2. The sounds reflected by solid objects vary according to the size and nature of the object.
3. Bats make use of the principle of echo-location to locate and steer clear of obstacles and to locate flying insects for food.

词汇练习参考答案

A lot of furniture made during the last war was *strictly utilitarian*; chairs were made to be sat on and tables to be sat at, but there was not much design in them and they weren't attractive.

There aren't many shops in this *vicinity*, so most people go shopping in the city.

John promised to contact us when he reached home, but three hours have *elapsed* and he still hasn't rung.

I know there is a woodpecker in the woods near us because I often hear one *tapping* on the trunk of one of the big trees.

Many archaeologists today employ special pieces of *apparatus* (rather like sophisticated metal detectors) to help them find objects under the ground.
In our local aquarium there is one large tank which has a *shoal* of fish consisting of hundreds of beautiful blue fish.
Although we have a lot of bats in Britain, some kinds are still *comparatively* rare.
His car has an alarm so that if anyone breaks into it, it will *emit* a terrible whistling sound.
If I were you, I would *steer clear* of that man; he is always in trouble with the police.

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. Perhaps the first use of the principle of echo-location is in instruments designed to calculate the depth of the sea.

Another use that the principle is applied to is locating shoals of fish, and it is even possible now to tell what kind of fish a shoal consists of.

Radar is also similar to echo-location since it helps aircraft and ships to locate objects in the dark by bouncing sound off them.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. To understand *the play thoroughly*, *you should really read it first*.

2. To enjoy *a good film*, *you really need to sit back in comfort in a big armchair*.

3. To succeed *in business*, *many people think you have to*

be utterly ruthless.

B. See text.

C. 1. The old man was deaf, so I managed to make him understand *by shouting*.

2. *By saving* a small amount of money every week for two years, I was able to buy my first computer.

3. In the small village where I was born, they still tell people when there's a fire *by ringing* the church bell.

D. 1. with 2. with 3. for 4. with 5. for
6. for 7. to 8. with

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *Sound* can be countable or uncountable and is something that can be heard: *There was a strange sound coming from the box. Sound waves travel at 340 metres per second in air.*

An *echo* (plural *echoes*) is a sound which is reflected or sent back from a solid surface or object: *I whistled three notes, and a few seconds later the echo came back from the hillside.*

2. A *discovery* is the act of finding something that was already there, but not known about before: *The discovery of gas in the North Sea has been very important to Great Britain.*

An *invention* is the creation of something that did not exist before: *The invention of the ball-point pen has meant that a pen is cheap enough for everyone to buy.*

3. *Appreciation* is understanding the good qualities or the worth of something: *She has a genuine appreciation of*

modern art.

Estimation refers to esteem or opinion, and in this sense is usually used in the phrase *in my/his/her estimation*: *In my estimation, he has made a complete fool of himself.*

4. An *obstruction* is something that blocks the path of something else: *The man had to have an operation to remove an obstruction from his throat.*

   An *obstacle* is something that prevents action, movement or success: *He has overcome lots of obstacles to get where he is today.*

5. The verb *steer* means 'make a boat or a car, lorry, etc. go in a particular direction': *I'd like you to steer the boat into the berth.*

   The verb *drive* means 'be responsible for making a vehicle move in general direction': *We drove from London to Southampton in an open-topped sports car.*

B. 1. by　2. in　3. from　4. of

C. 1. *Experience* here (uncountable) is the knowledge or skill which comes from practice.

2. An *experienced* surgeon is one who has a great deal of skill and knowledge acquired from years of practice.

3. *Experiences* here (countable) are life events that leave an impression on one.

D. Here, *to tell if* means 'know, or be able to say in advance'.

She is a very good singer, but it is too early to tell if she will be a great singer.

From behind it was impossible to tell if the person was a

man or a woman because he/she had long, shoulder-length hair.

E. potatoes, pianos, tomatoes, solos

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

   根据课文第4行"Everyone knows that if he shouts in the vicinity of a wall or a mountainside, an echo will come back(大家都知道,在墙壁或山腰附近发出喊声,就会听到回声)",得知选项(d)You will hear an echo(你会听到回声)为正确项。冲着山腰发出喊声并不能直接测出距离,因此选项(a)You will be able to measure distance(你能测量距离)为错误项。冲着山腰发出喊声会听到回声,因此选项(b)Nothing(不发生任何事情)为错误项。距离固体障碍物越远,回声返回的时间越长,而不是所有的回声都需要很长的时间返回,因此选项(c)It will take a long time for an echo to come back(需要很长的时间回声才能返回)为错误项。

2. (c)

   根据课文第6~7行"... and by measuring the time interval between the taps and the receipt of the echoes, the depth of the sea at that point can be calculated(……测出回声间隔的时间,便可算出该海洋的深度)",得知选项(c)working out how long it takes to get an echo from the sea bottom(计算出回声从海底传回所用的时间),就能测量出海洋的深度,因此该项为正确项。测量海洋的深度

靠敲打船体发出的声音所得到的回声返回的时间，而不是喊叫的声音，因此选项(a)shouting so you get back an echo(通过喊叫得到回声)为错误项。单靠敲击船体测不出海洋深度，而要靠计算出从敲击到回声返回所用的时间才能测出海洋的深度，故选项(b)tapping on the hull of a ship(敲击船体)为错误项。选项(d)calculating the reflection(计算反射)也不是测量海洋深度的方法，因此也为错误项。

3．(a)

根据课文第11～12行“... it is now possible not only to locate a shoal but to tell if it is herring, cod, or other well-known fish, by the pattern of its echo(……不仅能够确定鱼群的位置，而且可以根据鱼群回声的特点分辨出是鲱鱼、鳕鱼还是人们所熟悉的其他鱼)”，得知选项(a)locate and distinguish different species of fish(确定和分辨出不同的鱼种)为正确项。所得到的并不是某条鱼发出的回声，而是鱼群反射的回声，因此选项(b)hear a fish's echo为错误项。回声定位原理并不意味着要改进现在使用的仪器，因此选项(c)improve the apparatus now in use(改进现有仪器)为错误项。文中只谈到根据回声定位原理能定位并分辨出不同种类的鱼，而并未说能轻易地捕获各种鱼，因此选项(d)easily catch different species of fish(轻松地捕获各种鱼)为错误项。

4．(b)

根据课文第13～14行“they can locate and steer clear of obstacles(它们可以确定并躲开障碍物)”，得知选项(b)avoid bumping into things(避免撞上东西)为正确项。选项(a)see where they're going(明白它们要去的地方)并不是它们使用回声定位的目的。蝙蝠靠吃昆虫生存，它

们要寻找昆虫，而不是躲避昆虫，因此选项(c)avoid flying insects(避开飞虫)为错误项。蝙蝠靠发出尖叫声而得到回声，而不是靠回声定位原理而发出尖叫声，故选项(d)emit squeaks(发出尖叫声)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5、(a)

课文中使用的 all 与选项(a)every 所表达的意思相同，不同的是：all 后面跟复数名词，而 every 后面跟单数名词；all 可以修饰不可数名词，如：I like all music.(我喜欢所有的音乐。)而 every 不能修饰不可数名词。every 和 each 的后面都跟单数名词，都表示"每一个"，它们的不同之处在于：each 可以用来谈论两个及两个以上的人或物，而 every 常用来谈论 3 个及 3 个以上的人或物，如：The business makes less money each/every year.(这家公司每年赚的钱越来越少。)She had a child holding on to each hand.(而不能用 every hand)(她每只手搂着一个孩子。)此外 each 多指单个的人或物，而 every 多指整体，因此选项(b)each 为错误项。该句表示的是"动物发出的每一种声音，而且各种动物不可能发出一个整体的声音"，因此选项(c)the whole(整个的，整体的)为错误项。选项(d)the entire 与 the whole 所表达的意思相同，故也为错误项。

6. (b)

课文中是由 in which 引导的一个定语从句，在英语中 where 可以替代"介词 + which"，置于一个表示地点的名词之后，引导定语从句，因此选项(b)where 为正确项。选项(a)which 中缺少介词 in，因此为错误项。选项(c)when只能置于一个表示时间的名词之后，引导定语从句，因此为错误项。选项(d)why 应放在 reason 之后引导

定语从句，故为错误项。

7. (a)

该句为包含一个条件状语从句的复合句。在英语中 should 可以置于句首，引导一个条件从句，由于 should 为情态助动词，其后的动词应该用原形，因此选项(a)Should为正确项。选项(b)If 可以引导一个条件状语从句，但是该句中主语为第 3 人称单数，动词 shout 用的是动词原形，主谓人称与数不一致，故为错误项。选项(c)When引导时间状语从句，如果 shout 为第 3 人称单数，结构上是正确的，只因该动词为原形，与主语不一致，故为错误项。选项(d)Though 引导让步状语从句，用于该句中语义不通。

8. (c)

课文原句是由表示方式的副词 so 引导的倒装句：So was born the echo-rounding apparatus(这样就产生了回声仪器)。选项(c)That's how 中 how 引导一个表语从句，与原句同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)Such 只能作形容词和代词，而不能作副词代替 so，因此为错误项。选项(b)The way 和选项(d)Like this 用于该句结构均不正确。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的形容词是 utilitarian(实用的)，选项(d)practical与其同义。选项(a)secondary(次要的)、选项(b)important(重要的)和选项(c)usual(通常的)都与 utilitarian 意思不同，故均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的短语动词 tapping on 意即"敲打"，选项(a)hitting 的词义与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(b)knocking也是"敲打"的意思，但是当其表示"敲击某

物发出声响”时为不及物动词，后面应跟随介词 at，如 to knock at the door（敲门），因此该项为错误项。选项(c)beating（猛烈而连续地击打）与选项(d)bashing（撞击）均无“敲打”的意思，故均为错误项。

11．(a)

课文中使用的 according to 意即“根据”、“依据”，选项(a)depending on 与其同义，如：There are, depending on the individual, a lot of different approaches.（依照不同的个体，有多种不同的方法。）选项(b)relating to 的意思是“有关”，如 issues relating to the role of science in society（与科学在社会中的作用有关的问题）。选项(c)influencing的意思是“对……有影响的”。本题所表达的是“声音因物体的大小和性质的不同而不同”，而物体的大小和性质并不是动作的执行者，故不能用选项(d) by。

12．(c)

本题考查量词的用法。在英语中，将某些集合名词用于“集合名词＋of”的结构中时，该集合名词往往可以起到量词的作用。常用的此类结构如 an army of soldiers（一支军队）、a board of directors（董事会）、a flock of birds（一群鸟）、a swarm of bees（一群蜜蜂）、a bunch of flowers（一束鲜花）、a school of fish（一群鱼）等。表示“一群鱼”时用 a school of，因此选项(c)school 为正确项。选项(a)class表示“一类人或物”，选项(b)herd 表示“一群马或牛等”，选项(d)flock 表示“一群鸟或羊等”。

eliminate the need (l. 9):	get rid of the necessity
summit (l. 10):	high level meeting, usually between heads of government
complex (l. 11):	difficult to deal with
they may be hard-pressed (l. 11):	they may find it very difficult
construct (l. 13):	draw up, formulate, write
accord (l. 13):	agreement
hammer out (l. 14):	discuss the details of
products (l. 16):	items or things

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. The author's main argument in this text is that it would be good if rich countries like the U.S.A. and the countries of Europe could agree on and standardize their regulations regarding the standard, quality and safety of items that they grow or manufacture.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. Our fowl are fine, we simply clean them *differently/with a different method*.

2. It is not *only* farmers *that* are complaining.

3. They hope to finish *ahead of* a trade summit...

C. 1. say 2. say

D. 1. who 2. that 3. that 4. which 5. which

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *in a different way* = using a different method or manner of doing something

2. *this way* = in this direction

3. *on my way home* = as I was travelling in the direction of my home

4. *In a way* = From one point of view

5. *in my way* = obstructing my path

B. 1. *sold* = given or passed to someone in return for money

2. *for sale* = offered to be sold

3. *in the sales* = in the periods when shops offer goods at lower prices than usual

4. *unsold* = that no one has bought

C. 1. *on time* = punctual

2. *times* = periods

3. *those times* = that period in history

4. *just in time* = just early enough

5. *at the time* = when this happened

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 3～6 行"It is not just farmers who are complaining. An electric razor that meets the European Union's safety standards must be approved by American testers before it can be sold in the United States, and an American-made dialysis machine needs the EU's okay

before it hits the market in Europe(并不仅是农民在抱怨。一把符合欧洲联盟安全标准的电动剃须刀必须得到美国检测人员的认可,方可在美国市场上销售;而美国制造的透析仪也要得到欧盟的首肯才能进入欧洲市场)",得知选项(b)Problems with trading standards don't affect only American farmers(贸易标准问题不只影响到美国农民)为正确项。选项(a)American farmers are the only ones who are complaining about trading standards(美国农民是惟一对贸易标准抱怨的人)、选项(c)Europe is happy to import American poultry(欧洲乐于进口美国禽类)和选项(d)There is general agreement about regulations for world trade(就世界贸易规则取得总体一致)的陈述均与课文所述意义不符。

2. (d)

根据前文所述,欧洲生产的电动剃须刀必须得到美国检测人员的认可,方可在美国市场上销售,所以选项(d)after it has been given approval by U.S. authorities(在它得到美国当局的同意之后)为正确项。选项(a)if it conforms with European required standards(如果它符合欧洲所要求的标准)、选项(b)when it is safe to use(当它使用安全时)和选项(c) when it has hit the markets in Europe(当它已经进入欧洲市场时)都不是欧洲产剃须刀在美国市场销售的先决条件。

3. (a)

根据课文第 7～8 行"So, ask businesses on both sides of the Atlantic, why have two lots of tests where one would do? (因此,大西洋两岸的企业都在问,当一套测试可以解决问题时,为什么需要两套呢?)",得知选项(a)question whether two sets of tests are necessary(问两

套测试是否有必要)为正确项。选项(b)think the present situation is satisfactory(对现状满意)与现实正好相反。课文中只是谈到大西洋两岸企业反对两套测试,而未说他们已经同意取消现行方法,因此选项(c)have agreed to abandon two sets of tests(已经同意取消两套测试)为错误项。文中说双方一直在试图达成协议,而未说已经建立了新的单一测试办法,因此选项(d)have set up a single test which has everyone's approval(已经建立了得到大家认可的单一测试方法)为错误项。

4. (b)

根据课文最后一段,可以了解双方的主要分歧是选项(b)one side wants a general agreement and the other wants lots of separate ones(一方想达成一个总体的协议,而另一方则想达成多个独立的协议)。选项(a)it's difficult to construct agreements(达成协议十分困难)并不是双方的分歧。双方就达成什么样的协议而争论,并未涉及具体产品,因此选项(c)neither of them can agree about electronic goods and drug manufacturing(双方在电子产品和药品生产方面都意见不同)为错误项。选项(d)the EU follows fine continental traditions(欧盟遵循优良的大陆传统)并不是双方的主要分歧,故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

本题考查介词的用法。本题所表达的是"美国不能向欧洲出口鸡是因为双方的管理条例的差异",需要一个引导原因状语的介词,因此选项(d)because of 为正确项。选项(a)through、选项(b)according to 和选项(c)in respect of 都不能引导原因状语。

6. (b)

本题表达的是“不符合美国标准，欧盟的电动剃须刀不能在美国销售”。这里需要一个表示“能够”的情态助动词，因此选项(b)can't be 为正确项。选项(a)oughtn't to be(不应该)、选项(c)shouldn't be(不应该)和选项(d)doesn't have to be(不必要)都不能正确地表达上述意思，故为错误项。

7. (a)

本题考查动词的时态用法。根据课文所述，美国和欧盟一直在试图达成协议，因此该句应该用现在进行时，表示动作还在进行。这样，选项(a)are still trying 为正确项。选项(b)always try 不能将“一直在”表达出来。选项(c)tried表示过去，而与现在无关。选项(d)were trying 表示“过去一直在”。

8. (a)

本题考查“so + 形容词/副词 + that”引导的结果状语从句的用法。选项(a)so complex 为正确项。选项(b)enough complex 中的 enough 不能与 that 连用。英语中也可由“such + a + (形容词) + 名词 + that”引导结果状语从句，但 such 后面需跟冠词 a/an 再加名词单数，或名词前必须有形容词，如：He is such a marvelous joker that you can't help laughing.(他是一个如此奇妙的诙谐人物，弄得你不能不笑。)They are such wonderful players that no one can beat them.(他们都是出色的运动员，没有人能战胜他们。)选项(c)such complexity 中的名词 complexity 前既没有冠词 a 也没有形容词，因此为错误项。选项(d)too complex 应该用于 too... to 结构，而不能用于 that 引导的从句。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中使用的名词 regulations(规则)与选项(b)rules 同义。选项(a)laws(法律)、选项(c)commands(命令)和选项(d)orders(指令)都与 regulations 不同义。

10. (c)

课文中定语从句中使用的动词 meet(符合)与选项(c)is suitable for (适合,对……合适)表达的意义相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)fits 常指衣服等"合适",如:The dress fits her perfectly.(那条裙子她穿着十分合身。)或指"适合某种特定的场合等",如:The house fits nicely in that wooded area.(那座房子与那片林地很和谐。)所以该项为错误项。选项(b)matches 常指"相配",如:The skirt matches the jacket perfectly.(这条裙子与这件上衣很相配。)因此该项为错误项。选项(d)likes(喜欢)与句子所表达的意思相去甚远,故为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的动词 eliminate 意即"消灭"、"取消",与短语动词 to get rid of 表达的意义相同,故选项(b)rid of 为正确项。选项(a)away from(从……逃脱)、选项(c)out of (挣脱)和选项(d)lost in(在……迷失)都无"消灭"、"取消"的意思,故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的形容词是 optimistic(乐观的),选项(c)hopeful(寄予希望的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)clear-sighted(心明眼亮的)、选项(b)uncertain(没把握的)和选项(d)enthusiastic(充满激情的)都不能表达 optimistic 所表达的意思,故均为错误项。

Lesson 9
Royal espionage
王室谍报活动

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. It was easy for Alfred the Great to penetrate the Danish camp because at the time minstrels were welcome everywhere and because the Danes' security precautions were so casual.
2. Alfred defeated the Danes, not by engaging them in open battle, but by harrying them, halting raiding parties and leading skirmishes against them over the period of a month until they finally surrendered.

词汇练习参考答案

The robber entered the bank *disguised* as a security guard.

I watched the ants as they ran hither and *thither* in the garden.

The supervision of the children seemed to be very *slack*: they could all do whatever they wanted.

If the *security precautions* at the theatre had been better, the pop star would not have been attacked.

The singer promised to give all the *proceeds* from his biggest concert to charity.

The amount of money he earns is *trivial* compared with the large number of debts he has.

The troops *harried* the enemy's positions for a week.

The man was constantly *assailed* by worries.

Apart from the main battle, there were lots of *skirmishes* between small groups of soldiers in the nearby hills.

Everyone has his or her own *unique* fingerprints.

段落练习参考答案

A. 'The king who was a spy' *or* 'The first royal spy'.

B. 1. True   2. False   3. False   4. True

(2 is false because Guthrum was the name of the Danish leader, not a place.

3 is false because Alfred had a small army, not a large army.)

C. See text.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. many   2. many   3. much   4. Much of

5 Many of

B. See text.

C. He broke his right arm *as well as* his right leg.

As well as writing novels, she also writes plays for television.

D. 1. No one/Nobody   2. anywhere   3. anything

4. nothing   5. anyone/anybody

E. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The verb *wander* /ˈwɒndə/ means 'walk about without a fixed course or aim': *They wouldn't have got lost if they hadn't wandered from the main path.*

The verb *wonder* /ˈwʌndə/ means 'ask oneself': *I often wonder what I will do when I leave college.*

2. *Learn* and *teach* are often confused, even by some English people!

Learn means 'acquire knowledge': *I learned a lot from my English teacher.*

Teach means 'give or impart knowledge': *My English teacher taught me a lot about English literature.*

3. *Notice* means 'see and become aware of': *He quickly noticed that she was unwell.*

Remark means 'comment, say': *'It's going to be a nice day,' he remarked.*

4. *Conquerors* are people who take land by force: *The conquerors immediately imposed new laws in the country.*

Winners are people (or animals) who have won competitions, matches, races or prizes: *The winners of all the events in the college games were given medals.*

5. The noun *force* means 'natural or physical power': *If the man doesn't come out soon, the police are going to use force to break in and get him.*

Strength is 'the quality or degree of being strong or powerful': *He used all his strength to carry the child up the cliff to safety.*

B. 1. *settled down* = were living

歌手到处受到欢迎,他们不是作战人员,竖琴就是他们的通行证)",得知选项(c) Because minstrels were able to travel freely in those days(因为那时吟游歌手能够自由地到处旅行)为正确项。阿尔弗雷德大帝能轻易地进入丹麦军队的营地,是因为他装扮成到处都受到欢迎的吟游歌手,而并不是因为没人能认出他来,所以选项(a)Because no one would recognize him(因为没有人能认出他来)为错误项。选项(b)Because he had learned many Danish ballads in his youth(因为他年轻时学会了许多丹麦的民歌),也并不是他能轻易地进入丹麦军营的原因。丹麦人根本不知道他是国王,如果知道也就根本不会让他进入营地,因此选项(d) Because no one would refuse hospitality to a king(因为没人会拒绝款待国王)为错误项。

2. (d)

根据第 2 段的描述以及第 12～13 行"But Alfred had deduced that the Danes were no longer fit for prolonged battle: and that their commissariat had no organization, but depended on irregular raids(然而,阿尔弗雷德断定,丹麦人已不再适应持久的战争,他们的军需供应处于无组织状态,只是靠临时抢夺来维持)",得知选项(d) the Danes were unprepared for war(没做战争准备)为正确项。选项(a)the camp was easy to penetrate(很容易潜入军营)并不是阿尔弗雷德所观察到的情况。阿尔弗雷德注意到整个丹麦军队都非常自信,而非单单他们的司令官,因此选项(b) the Danish commander, Guthrum, had a lot of confidence(丹麦指挥官古瑟罗姆非常自信)为错误项。选项(c)winter was setting in(冬天将至)并不是阿尔弗雷德所要观察的事物。

3. (b)

通过在敌营里的观察，阿尔弗雷德认为敌军虽然庞大，但是纪律松弛，供给不足，不适宜长期作战，所以虽然他的军队无法与丹麦军队相比，但是与敌人展开游击战可以发挥小部队作战的优势，因此选项(b)his small army was not necessarily a disadvantage(他的小部队并不一定是劣势)为正确项。选项(a) he would have to stay in the Danish camp for a week(他得在丹麦营地里呆一个星期)并不是他得出的结论，因此为错误项。持久战对入侵的丹麦大部队是不利的，因此选项(c) the Danes would be dangerous in a prolonged battle(在持久战中，丹麦人会是危险的)是错误项。选项(d) the Danes could survive indefinitely on irregular raids(丹麦人依靠不定期的抢夺能无限期地存活下去)与事实恰恰相反，故为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文第 15 ~ 16 行"His patrols halted the raiding parties: hunger assailed the Danish army(他派出巡逻队阻止敌人抢劫，因而饥饿威胁着丹麦军队)"，得知导致丹麦军队投降的因素之一是选项(a)the Danes could no longer depend on irregular raids to obtain food(丹麦人再也不能依靠不定期的抢劫获得食物)。选项(b) King Alfred engaged in open battle(阿尔弗雷德国王进行公开的战斗)并不是阿尔弗雷德国王采取的战略。选项(c)this was a unique epic of royal espionage(这是王室谍报活动最精彩的篇章)并不是战胜丹麦人的因素之一。选项(d) they surrendered within a month(他们一个月内就投降了)并不是导致丹麦军队投降的原因。

Structure 句型

5. (a)

本题考查定语从句的用法及对时态概念的掌握。选项(a)who fight 为正确项，即用定语从句修饰 men，对 minstrels 进行一般概念上的说明。正因为如此，该定语从句中应当使用一般现在时结构。选项(b)to fight 该动词不定式结构形式虽然就语法而言也能作定语，但其动词所要表达出的是将要做出的动作，不能用来说明一般概念意义的动作，因此为错误项。现在分词也可以置于名词后面作定语，如：I watched the match because I knew some of the people playing.（我观看了比赛，因为我认识一些参赛的人。）但是现在分词作定语多表示"正在进行的动作"，不用来表达一般概念意义的动作，因此选项(c)fighting为错误项。选项(d)they fight 结构不正确。虽然定语从句前的关系代词有时可以省略，但其条件是用来说明先行词的关系代词应在定语从句中起宾语作用。显然，这里被说明的先行词 men 在定语从句中起到主语而非宾语的作用，因此这里的关系代词 who 不能省略，而由于有了关系代词 who 作定语从句的主语，这样选项(d)中的主语 they 就需去掉，而最终形成如选项(a)的答案。

6. (c)

课文中使用的连接词 as well as 与 not only... but also... 意思相同，即"不仅……而且……"。as well as 引导的信息是人们已经知晓的，而句子其他部分提供的信息才是新的，如：She's got a car as well as a motorbike. 相当于：She's got not only a motorbike, but also a car.（她不仅得到一辆摩托车，还得到一辆汽车。）选项(c)in addition to (除……之外)将 as well as 所表达的意思如实地表达了

出来，故为正确项。选项(a)also为副词，不能作连词用。选项(b)both不能用来连接前后两个名词，且所表达的语义也与文中不符，故为错误项。选项(d)moreover为副词，不能用作连接词。

7. (a)

英语中常用"before + 动词的-ing形式"结构作状语，这种用法较为正式，表示"在做某事之前"，如：Before beginning the book, she spent five years on research.（在开始写这本书之前，她用了5年的时间进行研究。）因此选项(a)returning为正确项。before为介词，后面不能跟动词不定式、动词原形等，因此选项(b)to return、选项(c)to returning和选项(d)return均为错误项。

8. (b)

介词"on + being + 动词的过去分词"在句子中作时间状语，表示"当被……时"，本题的意思是"当面对丹麦的进攻时"，因此选项(b)on being faced为正确项。选项(a)he was faced、选项(c)he faced和选项(d)in the face在结构上都是错误的。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

阿尔弗雷德之所以化装，其目的是不让敌人认出他来，故选项(a)recognized（认出）为正确项。选项(b)understood（理解）、选项(c)knew（认识）和选项(d)met（遇见）所表达的意思均不准确。

10. (c)

课文中使用的动词notice意即"注意到"，与"动词see + that从句"所表达的意思相同，因此选项(c)saw为正确项。选项(a)regarded（认为）、选项(b)remarked（说道）和选项(d)attended（出席，认真对待）与notice不同义，故均

为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的动词 assemble 意即"集结",gather 与其同义,故选项(a)gathered 为正确项。选项(b)picked up(收集)、选项(b)constituted(构成,任命)和选项(d)picked(挑选)都不能表达 assemble 的意思。

12. (d)

课文中使用的动词 halt 意即"阻止",与选项(d)put an end to(终止)所表达的意思相同。选项(a)attacked 意即"攻击",因此为错误项。选项(b)prevent(防止)虽也可以表示"阻止某人做某事"的含义,但其结构应是 to prevent sb. from doing sth.,如:Nothing will prevent us from going.(什么也阻止不了我们去。)选项(c)held back(抑制,使保持现有阶段)不能准确地表达 halt 的意思,故为错误项。

Lesson 10
Silicon Valley
硅谷

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Chip engineers will be able to 'let their imaginations soar' in future because they will not have to worry about making expensive mistakes.
2. The phrase 'garage start-ups' refers to the way enterprising individuals have developed computer hardware and software without the support of big business, i. e. in their own garages.
3. As well as their computer skills, Asian computer engineering staffs can provide a knowledge of customs and languages that will help to establish connections in Pacific Rim markets.

词汇练习参考答案

It's hard to know what direction fashion is taking this year as there are so many *trends*.

One month last year the temperature suddenly, and unusually, *soared* to 32℃.

Although the girl got all the questions correct, she was *penalized* for her untidy handwriting.

The information they had obtained gave their company *a jump* on their competitors in the same business.

They have been *rivals* in business ever since they opened shops next door to each other ten years ago.

Most plants will *thrive* on water and plenty of sunshine.

Our town has recently twinned with a town in France and there is going to be a meeing soon to create closer *links* between the two communities.

They have just finished a most *crucial* meeting which will decide the future of the company.

My wife and I *set up* this company together exactly a year ago.

Shell and Exxon have a *near lock* on the oil industry in the West.

Many scientists are now extremely concerned about the effects of *global* warming on our climate.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1 best expresses the main idea of the first paragraph. Although the three other statements are true, they do not summarize the main idea of the first paragraph as statement 1 does.

B. 2 best expresses the main idea of the second paragraph. Statement 1 is only partly correct since they are a majority at many Valley firms. Statement 3 is true, but does not summarize the main idea, while statement 4 is actually false.

C. The examples (Alex Au and N. Damodar Reddy) both illustrate how Asians are now getting to the top in the computer chip business and helping to inject new energy

into it.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. speaking 2. telling 3. driving 4. buying
   5. smoking

C. 1. arrives 2. gets 3. arrives 4. collect

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. Did you *notice* what the man was wearing?
   2. 'This is just what we want students to do,' *observed* the visitor as he inspected students at work in the laboratory.
   3. 'This is a beautiful village,' she *remarked*, 'I'd like to live here.'

B. A lot of people in Britain like *chips* so much that they eat them with everything.

C. 1. *set off* = began their journey
   2. *set in* = begun, started
   3. *set by* = save
   4. *set out* = leave
   5. *set to* = begin (work) eagerly or with determination

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第1～3行"Carver Mead, a pioneer in integrated

circuits and a professor of computer science at the California Institute of Technology, notes there are now work-stations that enable engineers to design, test and produce chips right on their desks...(卡弗·米德——集成电路的一位先驱,加州理工学院的计算机教授——注意到,现在有些计算机工作站使工程技术人员可以在他们的办公桌上设计、实验和生产芯片……)",得知选项(c)create chips on computers without having to manufacture them(在计算机上发明芯片而无需去生产它们)为正确项。文中谈到技术的发展使得人们可以直接在计算机上发明芯片,并不单单在加州理工学院,因此选项(a)create chips at the California Institute of Technology(在加州理工学院创造出芯片)为错误项。选项(b)pioneer integrated circuits in garages(率先在汽车间里生产出集成电路)与课文所述意义不符,故为错误项。选项(d)create newsletters whenever they want to(随时编辑出时事通讯)并不是技术发展带来的最新变化。

2. (a)

根据第 4～6 行"As the time and cost of making a chip drop to a few days and a few hundred dollars, engineers may soon be free to let their imaginations soar without being penalized by expensive failures(由于制造一块芯片的时间已缩短至几天,费用也只有几百美元,因此工程技术人员可能很快就可以充分发挥他们的想像力,而不会因失败而造成经济上的损失)",得知选项 (a)it doesn't matter whether inventors make mistakes(发明家是否出错就无足轻重了)为正确项。因为制造芯片的费用和所用的时间都减少了,错误不会造成很大的损失。在文章中,作者将技术人员的办公室比作能生产芯片的汽车间,而

Ph. D. from Hong Kong, has set up a Taiwan factory to challenge Japan's near lock on the memory-chip market(比如说,亚历克斯·奥,一位来自香港的斯坦福大学博士,已经在台湾建厂,对日本在内存条市场上近似垄断的局面提出了挑战)",得知选项(b)is now facing real competition(正面临着真正的竞争)为正确项。因为文中引用这个实例是说明内存条市场出现了竞争,打破了日本人统治的市场。文中谈到一个香港人在台湾建厂,因此选项(a)is now being challenged by a Taiwanese(正在受到一个台湾人的挑战)为错误项。出现了竞争,并未意味着日本人的垄断马上就要结束,因此选项(c)is about to end(接近终止)为错误项。选项(d)an AT & T chip plant in Kansas is going to take over(位于堪萨斯的 AT & T 芯片厂将取而代之)与文中所述意义不符,故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

课文中有关该句所使用的情态助动词 may 与选项(d)possible,虽用于不同的句子结构之中,但均表示"可能的"的含义。选项(a)certain(肯定的)、选项(b)true(真实的)和选项(c)necessary(必要的)均不能表达这一意思。

6. (c)

本题考查形容词 capable 的用法。capable 后面需跟"介词 of + (doing) + sth.",表示"有能力(做)某事的"、"有才能(做)某事的",因此选项(c)of perfecting 为正确项,而其他 3 项在结构上都不正确。

7. (b)

该题所要表达的是"大多数工程技术人员",考查 most 的用法。"most + 名词"表示 the majority of(大多数的)意思,因此选项(b)most 为正确项。"定冠词 the + most"

用于进行比较，表示“最多的”，有时 the 可以省略，如：Susan found (the) most blackberries.（苏珊找到的黑莓最多。）因此选项(a)The most 为错误项。选项(c)Many 表示“许多”，不表示“大多数”。选项(d)The greatest（最伟大的）与原文意义不符，故为错误项。

8. (b)

课文中使用的是 India-born，意即“生于印度的”，因此选项(b)was born 为正确项。选项(a)is born 时态不对。选项(c)born 为形容词，不能单独作句子中的谓语。选项(d)has borne 为动词 bear 的现在完成时形式，表示“生育”。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的是动词 enable，意即“使能够”，与动词 allow 一样可后接 sb. + 动词不定式（允许某人做，使某人能够做），并意思相同，因此选项(d)allow 为正确项。选项(a)make possible 中缺少宾语 it 和介词 for，正确的结构应该是 make it possible for。选项(b)allowed 时态不正确。选项(c)make it capable for 的用法不正确，capable 不能这样使用。

10. (c)

本题考查对 customized 词义掌握的情况。customize 意即“按照顾客的需要制造”，因此选项(c) to suit your needs（适合你的需要）为正确项。选项(a)in a traditional way（按传统方式）、选项(b)according to custom（按照惯例）和选项(d)perfectly（十全十美地）都不符合原义，故均为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中用 in droves 表达“大批的”、“大量的”，选项(a)in

large numbers 与其同义。选项(b)increasingly(日益增长地)、选项(c)like cattle(像牛似地)和选项(d)without limits(无限地)都与 in droves 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的 near lock 意即“近似垄断的”,选项(a)control of(控制)所表达的意思与其相同,因此为正确项。选项(b)locked up(锁起来)和选项(c)the key to(……的关键)所表达的语义与文中不符,因此为错误项。to be master of 可以表达“控制”的含义,但是该题中的动词是 has 而不是 to be,且选项(d)the master of 中不应有定冠词 the。

Lesson 11
How to grow old
如何安度晚年

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. It is justifiable for a young man to fear death because he might feel that he will be cheated of the best things that life has to offer.
2. The author regards the fear of death in old people as something abject and ignoble.
3. The best way for an old person to overcome the fear of death is for him or her to make their interests gradually wider and more impersonal.

词汇练习参考答案

The ordinary people were *oppressed* for years after the country was beaten in the war.

She really had no *justification* for speaking to him as rudely as she did.

When father left his money to his younger daughter, the elder daughter felt that she had been *cheated*.

As it got warmer, the waters began to *recede* from the flooded fields.

As the rainbow slowly faded, the different colours *merged* into

one another.

A lot of middle-aged people worry that, with signs of the *decay of vitality*, their relatives will put them into an old people's home.

After a journey of about 18 hours, it's not surprising that I was suffering from *weariness*.

段落练习参考答案

A. Statement 2 best expresses the main idea of the passage because it compares the attitudes of a young man and an old man to death.

B. See text.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. finds   2. arrives   3. changes

C. 1. ought to/should   2. must   3. ought to/should
   4. must

D. See text.

E. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. The regular verb *flow* (*flowed—flowed*) means 'move smoothly (as if) in a stream': *The river flowed gently down to the sea. The morning traffic flows past our house in a steady stream.*

   The irregular verb *fly* (*flew—flown*) means 'move through the air with wings or in an aircraft': *All of these birds will fly south in the autumn.*

B. There was a dispute about foreign fishermen fishing in our territorial *waters*.

C. In sentence 1, *since* is a conjunction meaning *as*, *as it is a fact that*, *because*.

In sentence 2, *since* is a preposition meaning *from a point in the past until now*.

D. I can *no longer* support our representative because I don't agree with his policies.

I can't support our representative *any longer* because I don't agree with his policies.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 1 行"In the young there is a justification for this feeling(青年人有这种感觉是情有可原的)",得知选项(a) not surprising (不足为奇)为正确项。选项(b)unnatural(不寻常的)、选项(c)oppressive(难以忍受的)和选项(d)deceitful(骗人的)都与原义不符,故为错误项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 4～5 行"... the fear of death is somewhat abject and ignoble(……如果怕死,就有点儿可怜可鄙)",得知作者鄙视老年人怕死的感觉,所以选项(a) is not something the writer admires(并不是作者所羡慕的)为正确项。选项(b)is wider and more impersonal(更广泛,并更超脱个人狭小的圈子)、选项(c)is all right for someone

who has known joys and sorrows(对于已经饱尝人间甘苦的人来说是说得过去的)以及选项(d)is truly justified(的确情有可原)均与原义不符,故为错误项。

3. (b)

根据课文第 5～7 行"The best way to overcome it—so at least it seems to me—is to make your interests gradually wider and more impersonal, until bit by bit the walls of the ego recede, and your life becomes increasingly merged in the universal life(克服怕死的最好办法——至少在我看来是这样——就是逐渐使自己的兴趣更加广泛,逐渐摆脱个人狭小的圈子,直到自我的围墙一点一点地倒塌下来,自己的生活慢慢地和整个宇宙的生活融合在一起)",得知选项(b)the sense of individuality decreases(个人感逐渐减少)为正确项。作者将人的一生比作一条长河,由窄到宽慢慢融入大海,而不是说人的存在变得像条河,因此选项(a)his existence becomes like a river(他的存在变得像一条河)为错误项。选项(c)life flows without a visible break(生命连绵不断地延伸)与原文所述意义不符,因此为错误项。选项(d)the waters flow more quietly(河水平缓地流淌)与人的超脱自我毫不相关。

4. (d)

根据课文第 11～12 行"And if, with the decay of vitality, weariness increases, the thought of rest will be not unwelcome(再者,随着精力的衰退,老年人的疲惫感会增加,有长眠的愿望未尝不是一件好事)",得知选项(d)he looks forward to death(他期盼死亡)为正确项。选项(a)the things he cares for will continue(他关心的事会继续)是一种现实,而不是老人所达到的阶段,因此为错误项。选项(b)he wishes to die while still at work(他希望工

作到死)是作者的愿望,而不是广泛的现实,因此为错误项。选项(c)his life will continue(他的生命能得以延续)与文中所述意义不符,故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

本题考查动词的语态和时态。justify 为及物动词,后面需跟宾语。该句中 this feeling 为主语,是动作的承受者而非动作的执行者,故该句应为被动语态。因为原文中使用的是现在时态,表明某种现实,所以选项(d)is justified(得到证明)为正确项。选项(a)has justified 语态不当。选项(b)was justified 时态有误。选项(c)justified 语态有误。

6. (d)

该题考查关系代词的用法。该句中定语从句的先行词是 an old man,指人,当先行词指人时用关系代词 who 或 that,因此选项(d)that 为正确项。选项(a)what 和选项(b)which 作关系代词时只能指代物而不能指代人,所以为错误项。选项(c)表示省略了关系代词。在英语中只有当关系代词在从句中作宾语时才可以省略,所以该项为错误项。

7. (a)

本题考查情态助动词 should 和 ought to 的用法。在英语中,它们有时用来表达相同的含义,即"应该"。如:I think you should/ought to try a different approach.(我认为你应该尝试一种别的方法。)所以选项(a)ought to 为正确项。选项(b)must(必须)、选项(c)has *to*(不得不)和选项(d)is obliged to(必须)均与 should 所表达的意思不同。

8. (d)

该句中的 death 为不可数名词,泛指"死亡",故不能用冠

词 a 或 the，因此选项(d)为正确项，而选项(a)A、选项(b)The和选项(c)Every 均为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的是短语动词 cheat of(骗取)，选项(d)robbed(剥夺)与其所表达的意思相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)deceived表示"欺骗"，并没有"夺取"的意思，故为错误项。选项(b)lied(撒谎)为不及物动词，不能用于被动语态，此外语义也与 cheat 所表达的不同。选项(c)stolen(偷盗)与 cheat 所表达的语义不同。

10. (b)

课文中使用的动词 merge 意即"合并"、"融合"，选项(b)join(结合，加入)所表达的意思与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)lost(迷失)、选项(c)sunk(沉入)和选项(d)contained(包含)与 merge 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

11. (d)

课文中使用的副词 gradually 意即"逐渐地"，选项(d)Little by little(渐渐地)与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)Less and less(越来越少地)、选项(b)Step by step(逐步地)和选项(c)One by one(一个接一个地)所表达的意思与 gradually 不同，故均为错误项。

12. (b)

课文中使用的 knowing 意即"明白"，选项(b)aware 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)thinking(认为)、选项(c)believing(相信)和选项(d)accepting(承认)都不能确切地表达 knowing 的含义，故均为错误项。

If you just think about the idea of a hovercraft, you'll realize that the *concept* is a relatively simple one.

When my aunt changed her signature recently, it *gave rise to* quite a lot of problems—until she gave new specimens to the bank and other authorities.

The doctor took *specimens* of blood from all the students.

The boy *forged* his father's signature on his school report acceptance form.

The computer *facilitates* the whole business of standard letters in many offices.

段落练习参考答案

A. In the first paragraph, the writer makes it clear that the relationship between a bank and its customer is a two-sided arrangement, both with obligations to each other and with neither more important than the other.

B. Statement 1 expresses the main idea of the second paragraph because it mentions a customer's instructions, not simply cheques and signatures.

C. See text.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. The bank has no right or authority to pay out a customer's money on a cheque *on which* its customer's signature has been forged.

2. The source *from which* I obtained this information is very reliable.

3. We have certain principles *on which* we should act.

B. 1. I am not referring to our policy but to *that of* our

opponents.

2. The only system I know which will help you to remember what you have heard at a lecture is *that of* keeping notes.

C. 1. The exhibition consists entirely of *pictures painted* by young children.

2. *The report* on education *prepared* by a government committee will soon be published.

3. According to the regulations, *income earned* overseas will be taxed.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The two words *current* and *currant* are pronounced the same.

The adjective *current* means 'belonging to the present, of the present day': *That word is no longer in current use*.

As a noun, a *current* is 'a continuously moving mass of liquid or gas' or 'the flow of electricity past a fixed point': *The current is strongest in the middle of the river. This button switches the current on*.

A *currant* is a 'small dried seedless grape, especially used in baking cakes': *My mother always puts a kilo of currants into a cake like this*.

2. The verbs *lend* and *borrow* are easily confused.

Lend something to someone (or *lend* someone something) means 'give someone the possession or use of something on the condition that it will be returned later', while *borrow* means 'take or receive something

from another person, usually with permission, and with the understanding that it will be returned after a certain time'.

I lent a book to James./I lent James a book.

James borrowed a book from me.

3. *In favour of* means 'approving of, on the side of, in support of': *She is very much in favour of women managers.*

   For the sake of means 'in order to help, improve or bring advantages': *He was advised to go and live near the coast for the sake of his health.*

4. *Whether* and *weather* are pronounced the same, but are very different in meaning.

   Whether is a conjunction meaning 'if... or not': *I don't know whether to go swimming.*

   The noun *weather* is the condition of wind, temperature, rain, sunshine, snow, etc., at a certain time or over a period of time: *If the weather is fine, we'll have the party outside in the garden.*

5. *Loaded* is the past tense of the verb *load* meaning 'put (a load) on or in (a vehicle, structure, etc.)': *They loaded their furniture into the van.* It also means 'put bullets into a gun or film into a camera': *This gun is loaded.*

   Laden is an adjective meaning 'heavily loaded': *The lorry was fully laden. The apple trees are laden with fruit this year.*

6. The adverb *else* after question words and some pronouns means 'besides, also': *We need another*

helper. Can you find anyone else?

The pronoun *other* means 'the second of two, the remaining one of a set': *One of you is right; the other is wrong*. It also means 'an additional person or thing': *Are there any other problems?*

7. A *specimen* is 'a piece or amount of something for being shown, tested, etc.': *The doctor will need a specimen of your blood.*

   An *example* is 'something taken from a number of things of the same kind, which shows the usual quality of the rest or shows a general rule': *Can you give me an example of an adjective that ends in '-ive'?*

8. A *customer* is 'a person or organization who buys goods or services from a shop, business, etc.': *That man spends £20 a week in our shop and is one of our best customers.*

   A *client* is 'a person who gets help and advice from a professional person, for example from a lawyer, accountant, etc.': *That young accountant hasn't been in business long, but he already has 50 clients.*

9. The two words *cheque* and *check* are pronounced the same, but in British English have different meanings.

   A *cheque* is 'a written order to a bank, on special printed paper, to pay a certain sum of money from one's bank account to oneself or to another person': *I haven't got enough cash, I'm afraid, so will you take a cheque?*

   A *check* is 'an examination or inspection to make certain that something is correct or in good condition':

They gave the car a thorough check before they bought it. (The verb *check* means 'test, examine or inspect to see if something is correct, true, in good condition, etc.': *Their bags were checked by security guards as they entered the building*.)

In American English, the spelling *check* is used for the British English *cheque*.

10. The verb *adopt* /ə'dɒpt/ means 'take and use as one's own': *We adopted their production methods because they were so much better than our own*.

    The verb *adapt* /ə'dæpt/ means 'make suitable for new needs, new conditions': *When they moved to France, the children adapted to the change very well*.

11. The verb *print* means 'press letters or pictures onto paper by using shapes covered with ink, or copy letters, etc. onto paper by using photographic methods': *This new machine can print 60 pages a minute*.

    The verb *type* means 'operate a (typewriter or word processor) keyboard with your fingers': *I can only type with two fingers*.

B. 1. *account* = a sum of money kept in a bank, which may be added to and taken from

2. *account* = a bill, statement of money owed
3. *account for* = explain, give a satisfactory explanation for
4. *account* = a written or spoken report or description
5. *on my account* = for my advantage or benefit
6. *on account of* = because of

C. I don't know what to ask for my old bicycle, but how about, *say*, $100?

Farmers, unlike, *say*, office workers, are bound to get dirty at work.

D. When they *entered* the house, no one said a word.

Let's *discuss* the problem like adults.

As soon as we *reached* the top of the mountain, we all had a drink.

I wouldn't *leave* your car here if I were you.

E. *In addition to* giving practice in speaking, the course also aims to help students improve their writing skills.

A large number of people attended the concert at our local hall last Saturday.

The spelling of German, *unlike* English, is very easy to understand.

You will be paid £250 *in respect of* the work you have done so far.

She has been ill for a month, and *for this reason* she has had to stay away from work.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 1～2 行"When anyone opens a current account at a bank, he is lending the bank money, repayment of which he may demand at any time, either in cash or by drawing a cheque in favour of another person(任

何人在银行开一个活期账户，就等于把钱借给了银行。这笔钱他可以随时提取，提取的方式可以是取现金，也可以是开一张以他人为收款人的支票）”，得知选项(c)can draw money without notice(可以随时提取而无需通知)为正确项。课文中谈到银行和储户是债务人和债权人的关系，究竟谁是债务人而谁是债权人，要看储户是有结余还是透支。从中得知，即便你是透支，你也可以从银行取款，只是双方关系发生了变化，因此选项(a)can't draw any money if you're overdrawn(如果你透支就不能取钱)为错误项。从对前一项的分析得知，储户可以有结余，也可以透支，因此选项(b)must always be in credit(必须总有结余)为错误项。根据前文所述，得知储户也可以开以他人为收款人的支票，因此选项(d)can't pay money to anyone else(不能付款给他人)为错误项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 8 行“The bank must obey its customer's instructions, and not those of anyone else(银行必须遵照储户的嘱托办事，不能听从其他人的指令)”，得知银行的责任之一就是必须遵照储户的指令办事，因此选项(a)is that it can't take instructions from other people(它不能听从他人的指令)为正确项。课文中谈到银行和储户都有相应的义务，这些义务往往引起纠纷和问题，这些问题和纠纷并不是银行所能解决和避免的，因此选项(b)is that it can avoid complications and problems(它能避免纠纷和问题)为错误项。选项(c)it must pay money to the customer even if he is seriously overdrawn(即使储户大量透支，它也必须付给他钱)文中并未提及。就选项(d)it must print the customer's signature (它必须印刷储户的姓名)而言，文中提到把储户姓名印在支票上，而不是印刷

出来，所以此项为错项。

3. (b)

根据课文第14～15行“If this facilitates forgery, it is the bank which will lose, not the customer(如果因这种做法出现了伪造的话，受损失的将不是储户，而是银行)”，得知选项(b)you wouldn't lose your money(你不会损失你的钱)为正确项。选项(a)you would lose your money(你会损失钱)与原文所述意义正好相反，因此为错误项。选项(c)the bank wouldn't lose any money(银行不会损失任何钱)也与课文所述意义不同，因此为错误项。银行必须要能辨认客户的签名，而不是总让伪造者得逞，因此选项(d)the bank would always pay money to the forger (银行总是会付给伪造者钱的)为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文第13～14行“For this reason there is no risk to the customer in the practice, adopted by banks, of printing the customer's name on his cheques(因此，某些银行已采用把储户姓名印在支票上的做法。这种做法对储户毫无风险)”，得知选项(a)It doesn't matter to a customer if the bank prints his name on cheques(银行将客户的姓名印在支票上对客户没有丝毫影响)为正确项。根据前文所述得知，有些银行的确将储户的姓名印在支票上，因此选项(b)Banks never print the names of customers on cheques (银行从不将储户的姓名印在支票上)为错误项。选项(c)It's easy to forge a signature on a cheque which prints a customer's name(在印有储户姓名的支票上很容易伪造签名)和选项(d)Banks always lose money when they print customers' names on cheques(银行将储户姓名印在支票上时经常损失钱)并非事实，故均为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

该句考查代词的用法。该处的代词指 money, money 为不可数名词,因此应该用选项(c)it。选项(a)you 和选项(b)them 都不能代替 money。用不定代词 some 在结构上是正确的,但是语义与课文所述意义不符,储户任何时间都可以取款,还可以透支,并不是只取一些钱,因此选项(d)some 为错误项。

6. (c)

本题考查介词 of 短语表示所属关系的用法。of 短语同代词 my、your、his、her、their、its 或 's 结构一样表示所属关系,如 my brother(我弟弟)、a bird's nest (鸟巢)、a feeling of disappointment(失望感)等。选项(c)account of a customer(客户账户)为正确项。选项(a)account of a customer's 和选项(b)account of a customers' 之所以错误,是因为可以说 a friend of mine,但是在 of 后不能再用"名词+-'s"形式。选项(d)customers' account 中 account 为单数,customers' 为复数,道理上讲不通,因为不可能多个储户开同一个账户。

7. (d)

be obliged to do 意即"必须做",如:We are obliged to attend all classes.(我们必须上所有的课。)根据规定,银行必须服从储户的指令,因此选项(d)is obliged to(必须)为正确项。选项(a)is necessary to(需要)语气略显不足,因为遵守客户指令是银行必须履行的职责。选项(b)may (可以)表示某种可能性,而不是必须要做到。选项(c)can always(总能)也并不能表达出必须要做到的含义。

(c)hear(听到)和选项(d)listen(听)并没有"服从"的意思。

12.(b)

课文中使用的名词是 specimens(样本),选项(b)samples 与其同义。选项(a)examples(例子,实例)、选项(c)copies(副本)和选项(d)types(类型)与 specimens 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

Lesson 13
The search for oil
探寻石油

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. An oil derrick is designed to support the drill pipe as it is lowered into and raised from the hole or well.
2. Oilmen prevent oil from gushing to the surface by means of mud which they circulate down the drill pipe.

词汇练习参考答案

An English £1 piece is quite small, only about 2.2cm *in diameter*.

We could hardly sleep in the night because of the sound of *drilling* in the road outside our house.

An elephant can *haul* extremely heavy loads behind it with no problem.

The scenery in the theatre was painted on both sides so that it could be *rotated* for use in different scenes.

For most of the concert the children sat quietly listening, but *every so often* one of them would turn and whisper to a friend.

I will *endeavour* to pay the account as soon as possible.

段落练习参考答案

A. The author would agree with statement 1. Statement 2 is untrue: it is easy to obtain samples of the rocks the drill has been cutting through. (ll. 8-10) Statement 3 is also untrue, since oilmen can control the pressure that forces the oil to gush. (ll. 11-13)

B. See text.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

C. 1. are going to 2. will 3. will be 4. will
   5. is going to

D. 1. Tell me where *he lives*. (Direct question: Where does he live?)
   2. I don't know why *he went there*. (Direct question: Why did he go there?)
   3. Ask him how *he knows so much about the town*. (Direct question: How do you know so much about the town?)
   4. Did he tell you when *he was born*? (Direct question: When was he born?)

E. Note that we say 'want it to stay down', *not* * want that it stays down'.

Certain verbs will normally be followed by a noun or a pronoun when used with a *to*-infinitive. Such verbs are *advise*, *allow*, *ask*, *teach*, *cause* and *warn*.

She *allowed* me to have the day off.

Can you *ask* him to go shopping for me?

Can you *teach* me to write Chinese?

The police still don't know what *caused* the driver to swerve off the road.

They *warned* me not to stay too long.

I *advise* you to leave as soon as possible.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The words *hole* and *whole* are pronounced the same, but have different meanings.

A *hole* is an empty space inside something solid: *There was a large hole in the field and at the bottom of the hole was the entrance to a cave.*

The adjective *whole* means 'all (the) or the full amount of': *When I was ill the last time, I took a whole week off college.*

2. An *engine* is 'a piece of machinery with moving parts which changes power from steam, electricity, oil, etc. into movement': *A jet engine is extremely noisy.*

A *machine* is 'any instrument or apparatus which uses power, such as electricity, to perform work': *They've just bought a new washing machine. We've got a drinks machine in our office.*

3. The verb *fit* means 'be the right size or shape (for)': *These shoes fit me perfectly.*

The verb *suit* means 'match or look good on (someone)': *She should never wear red: the colour doesn't suit her at all.*

4. The adjective *clean* means 'free from dirt' (*I must put on a clean shirt this evening*) or 'having a smooth edge or surface' (*The surgeon made a clean cut in the*

patient's arm).

The adjective *clear* means 'easy to hear, read or understand': *The lecturer was a very clear speaker.*

5. The noun *control* means 'the power to command, influence or direct': *They have no control at all over their children.*

The noun *check* means 'an examination or inspection, to make certain that something is correct or in good condition': *You should keep a check on the oil level in your car.*

B. 1. construct 2. extinguish 3. tolerate
4. postponed

C. 1. From the moment that/When/As soon as
2. one time
3. Some time ago/A long time ago
4. occasionally
5. immediately
6. Suddenly and unexpectedly

D. Don't worry—everything is *under control*.

That woman's children are so badly-behaved they are almost *out of control*.

I couldn't help the family because the situation was completely *beyond my control*.

E. The young man got into his car and *drove off* without looking to see if anything was coming.

I know he lost his temper, but he'll *cool off* soon.

As soon as the film finished, they came out of the cinema and *hurried off* home.

Can you *switch off* all the lights before you go to bed?

My mouth is feeling all tingly now that the injection *is wearing off*.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 3～4 行“...and the search for oil has done more to improve deep drilling than any other mining activity(……寻找石油比其他任何采矿业对改进深孔钻探做的贡献都要大)”,得知与其他采矿业不同之处在于,采油不需要人下到矿井,完全靠深井钻探寻找石油,因此选项(a)of the need to locate oil(需要确定石油的位置)为正确项。选项(b)it is necessary to go down as much as 25,000 feet(有必要下到 25,000 英尺深)中先行词 it 所指的 go down 不明确,即未明确指出做出 go down 动作的行为者。选项(c)there is no need to send men down deep holes to get oil(没必要派人到深井里去采油)并不是促使深钻技术进步的原因。只有寻找石油才需要钻非常深的井,其他矿床的寻找不需钻那么深的井,因此选项(d)of the constant search for mineral deposits(为了不断地寻找矿床)为错误项。

2. (c)

从课文第 5～7 行“... we put up at the surface an oil derrick....and we have to lower into the ground and haul out of the ground great lengths of drill pipe which are rotated by an engine at the top and are fitted with a cutting bit at the bottom(……我们就在那里竖起一个井架。

……我们必须把很长的钻杆一节节地打入地下，然后再从地下拉出来。钻杆顶部安装的发动机带动钻杆旋转，它的底部装有钻头)”，了解到井架的作用很大，钻井所需的设备都装在井架上，因此需要竖起井架，故选项(c)to control all the equipment needed to drill a deep hole(控制钻深井所需的全部设备)为正确项。选项(a)because it is like a giant block and tackle(因为它像一个巨大的滑轮组)并不是竖立井架的原因，而且也并不是井架使钻杆顶部的发动机旋转，因此选项(b)to rotate the engine at the top(旋转顶部的发动机)为错误项。竖起井架并不是为了确定在哪里采油，而是确定了在哪里钻探之后才在哪里竖井架，因此选项(d)to decide exactly where to drill for oil(准确地确定在哪里钻井采油)为错误项。

3. (d)

根据第 8～9 行“The geologist needs to know what rocks the drill has reached, so every so often a sample is obtained with a coring bit(地质学家需要知道钻头已经到达什么样的岩层，因此时常要用取芯钻头取样)”得知，要知道钻到什么岩层，惟一的方法就是时常取样，因此选项(d)bring up specimen material from time to time(不时地抽取样品)为正确项。选项(a)cut clean cylinders of rock (切割光滑的圆柱形岩石剖面)并不代表取样，故为错误项。选项(b)use the coring bit(使用取芯钻头)只是取样的手段。不取样就无法知道或记录岩层，因此选项(c)take note of the strata below the surface(记录表层下的岩层)为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文第 10 行“Once we get down to the oil, it usually flows to the surface because great pressure...(一旦到达油

层，石油就会由于地下巨大的压力流到地面上来……)"，得知如果不控制油的压力，油就会喷出地面，因此选项(a)oil will be forced to the surface with great force(油就会被巨大的力量顶出地面)为正确项。人们采用让泥浆顺着钻杆向下循环的方法控制井压，以防止油的喷出，而不是不控制油压产生的后果，因此选项(b)mud will have to be circulated down the drill pipe(泥浆必须顺着钻杆向下循环)为错误项。选项(c)you will have to catch the oil at the surface(你不得不在地面接住石油)并不是要控制油压的原因。不控制油压，油将喷出地面，而不是水喷出地面，因此选项(d)water will gush to the surface(水将喷出到地面)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

本题所表达的是钻井深度深达 25,000 英尺，这里指距离，表示距离有多远时用 as far as，如：We walked as far as the church.(我们就走到教堂。)因此选项(c)far 为正确项。选项(a)many 不能用来表示距离。选项(b)long 虽然可以用来表示距离，但是它不能单独用来表示距离，如不能说 * It's long from here to Shanghai. * 而应说：It's a long way from here to Shanghai.(从这里到上海很远。)在谈到距离有多远时，只能用 as far as，而不用 as long as。as long as 的意思是"只要"。选项(d)distant 意即"远处的"，不用来表示距离有多远。

6. (b)

该句表达"没有什么像寻找石油那样为深井钻探的进步作出那么多的贡献"。选项(b)much 为正确项。as much 在句中作状语，修饰动词 do，表示程度。选项(a)many 不能作副词修饰动词。as long as 连接条件状语从句，表示

"只要",因此选项(c)long 为错误项。as far as 表示距离有多远,故选项(d)far 为错误项。

7. (d)

本题考查引导名词性从句的关系代词 which 的用法。which 后可以跟名词引导宾语从句,如:Do you know which country he played for?(你知道他代表哪个国家参赛吗?)因此选项(d)which 为正确项。选项(a)that 也可以引导宾语从句,如:We knew that the next day would be difficult.(我们知道第 2 天会十分困难。)但是它不能作定语后跟名词,因此为错误项。选项(b)when 也可以引导宾语从句,如:I don't know when he will leave.(我不知道他何时离开。)但是它表示时间,且不能作定语后跟名词,故为错误项。选项(c)how 也可以引导宾语从句,如:Does anybody know how big the universe is?(有人知道宇宙有多大吗?)但是,它在从句中表示方式,或作副词修饰形容词,如前面例句中的 how big,而后面不能跟名词,因此也为错误项。

8. (a)

英语中有些副词可以作从属连词引导时间状语从句,如 immediately、directly 等。课文中使用的是从属连词 once,表示"一旦"。选项(a)Immediately 为正确项,表示"一……就",与 once 所表达的意思相同。选项(b)The first time(第一次)、选项(c)Until(直到)和选项(d)As long as(只要)都不能准确地表达 once 所表达的意思。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中用 diameter 表示"直径"。选项(b)across 为副词,表示"宽度"或圆的"直径",因此为正确项。选项(a)round作副词时表示"从头至尾的一段时间",如:We

Lesson 14
The Butterfly Effect
蝴蝶效应

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. By 'small pieces of weather' the author means almost any weather events, including thunderstorms and blizzards (which may not seem 'small' to the average man).
2. Modern weather models work on a grid of points roughly sixty miles apart.
3. In this passage, the phrase 'the Butterfly Effect' probably means the effect that minor changes have on the weather which makes it impossible to forecast weather accurately.

词汇练习参考答案

Many financial forecasts are highly *speculative* because no one really knows what might happen tomorrow to affect the money markets.

Air pollution is a *global* problem, not one which affects just a few industrialized countries.

There is one main road to the south, and the farther south you travel, the more it *deteriorates*.

The patient recovered very *rapidly* after her operation.

Insects seem to *multiply* in hot weather.

The early twentieth century was a *turbulent* period in the history of that country.

Suppose it rains, what shall we do then?

This old clock is so *accurate* that I can even set my computer clock by it.

The time is now 11.05 and 20 seconds *precisely*.

At this time of year there are quite wide *fluctuations* in the price of vegetables.

The *average* salary for an office worker is £8,000 a year.

An accountant nearly always has to take account of *errors* in his clients' calculations.

段落练习参考答案

The author would agree with statement 2 because right at the start of the text the author states that weather forecasts are at best 'speculative' and over a long period 'worthless'.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. There's a fault in the earth's crust *running* (= and it runs) along the west coast of the U.S.A.

2. The hurricane hit Florida, *sweeping away* (= and it swept away) everything in its path.

3. I noticed the lights were on, *assuming* (= and I assumed) they were at home.

4. The President emerged from the airport *waving* (= and he waved) to the reporters.

B. 1. You can go home early, providing (that) *you finish your work*.

2. We can offer you a job on condition (that) *you start*

next Monday.

3. You can come in any time you like tomorrow morning so long as *you come in on Saturday as well*.
4. I won't phone you unless *I need some help*.
5. He'll definitely win even if *he gets a slow start*.

C. 1. *a*. He will not get the fax tomorrow morning.

b. He will have the fax tomorrow morning. In fact, it will reach him sometime between now and then.

2. *a* He will wait in Beijing. The message will arrive. Then he will leave.

b. He will leave Beijing. Then this message will arrive. But he won't be there to receive it.

3. *a*. When next June comes, the new motorway will be ready. (We don't know exactly when they will complete it, but it will be sometime between now and next June.)

b. This sentence stresses the fact that next June is the earliest date for the completion of the new motorway.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *since* = because

2. *since* = from the time when

3. *since* = from then until now

4. *since* = from (eight o'clock) until now

5. *Since* = As, As it is a fact that

B. 1. Whether　　2. whether　　3. if/whether

4. whether　　5. if/whether

Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第3～4行"For small pieces of weather—and to a global forecaster, small can mean thunderstorms and blizzards—any prediction deteriorates rapidly(对于小片的恶劣天气——对一个全球性的气象预报员来说，'小'可以意味着雷暴雨和暴风雪——任何预测的质量很快下降)"，得知天气预报的困难在于小规模的天气变化所引起的结果很难预测，因此选项(d) the effect of tiny changes cannot be detected or calculated(不能发现或计算出细微变化所带来的结果)为正确项。选项(a) conditions rapidly deteriorate(环境迅速地恶化)、选项(b) there is always turbulence(总是有乱流)和选项(c) only satellites have a panoramic view of conditions(只有卫星才具有环视环境的广阔视角)都不是导致预报天气困难的原因。

2. (b)

根据课文第7～8行"The modern weather models work with a grid of points of the order of sixty miles apart, and even so, some starting data has to be guessed, since ground stations and satellites cannot see everywhere(现代气象模型以一个坐标图来显示，图中每个点大约间隔60英里，即使是这样，有些开始时的资料也不得不依靠推测，因为地面工作站和卫星不可能看到地球上的每一个地方)"，得知即使有点距间隔为60英里的坐标图，预报员也得进行最初的推测，因此选项(b) have to make assumptions about some of the data(不得不对一些数据进行推测)为正

确项。从前文所述，得知卫星也不可能看到地球上的每个地方，而且那些坐标图数据也是依靠卫星等获得的，因此选项(a)have to depend on satellites for information(不得不依靠卫星获取信息)为错误项。点距间隔为60英里的坐标图就是现代气象模型的显示形式，因此选项(c)work on modern weather models(在现代气象模型上工作)为错误项。选项(d)prevent errors from multiplying(避免错误加剧)与原文意义不符，且整个句子语义不通。

3. (d)

根据课文第13～14行"The computer will still be unable to predict whether Princeton, New Jersey, will have sun or rain on a day one month away(计算机无法推断出一个月以后的某一天新泽西州的普林斯顿究竟是晴天还是雨天)"，得知选项(d)At present, there is no way of making absolutely accurate predictions(目前，尚无作出完全准确的预测的方法)为正确项。选项(a)The only way to solve the problem is to have sensors spaced at one-foot intervals(解决这个问题惟一的办法是以一英尺间隔的距离布置传感器)中提到的方法也会产生偏差，导致预测不准，因此为错误项。选项(b)The only way to solve the problem is to have infinitely powerful computers(解决这个问题惟一的办法是拥有无限强大的计算机)中提到的无限强大的计算机也并不能进行准确的预报，故该项也为错误项。选项(c)The only way to solve the problem is to have perfectly accurate readings(解决这个问题的惟一办法是拥有精确的读数)中提到的精确的读数也并不能进行准确的预报，故为错误项。

4. (c)

本题考查文章的主旨。本文谈到的是天气预报方面的蝴

蝶效应，即微小的天气变化会导致极大的天气变化。温度、气压和湿度的微小变化会导致完全预想不到的天气环境，因此选项(c) can lead to completely unexpected weather conditions(会导致完全出乎意料的天气环境)为正确项。根据课文第15～17行"By 12.01, those fluctuations will already have created small errors one foot away. Soon the errors will have multiplied to the ten-foot scale, and so on up to the size of the globe(到12点过1分时，那些波动就已经会在1英尺远的地方造成偏差。很快这种偏差会增加到10英尺的范围，如此等等，一直到全球的范围)"得知，用来监测温度、气压、湿度的传感器之间的距离会掩盖波动，这些波动会随着范围的扩大而导致偏差的增大，因此选项(a) will be picked up by sensors at one-minute intervals(会被传感器以每分钟的间隔捕捉到)是错误的。根据课文所述，目前不可能以天气细微的变化预测未来的天气，因此选项(b) are used to predict the weather one month ahead(用来预测一个月以内的天气)为错误项。选项(d) produce expected results(产生预料之中的结果)与课文所述意义恰恰相反，因此为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

课文中使用的是一般现在时，该题中选项(c) will deteriorate 为正确项，句中的情态助动词 will 表示"可能性"，意即任何预测的质量都会很快地下降。其他3项所用的时态都不恰当，因为该句只是一般的陈述，而不是说"预测质量正在下降"、"已经下降"等。

6. (a)

课文中使用的情态助动词 can 与选项(a) are able to 都可用来表达现在的能力，只是 be able to 较 can 更为正式，因

此该项为正确项。选项(b)could 也可以用来表示现在的能力，区别在于虽有能力但是不去做，如：They could do a great deal more in this country to educate people.(他们本可以在这个国家为教育人民做更多的事情。)因此该项为错误项。选项(c)are possible 后面不能直接接动词原形，动词前应有 to。选项(d)are capable 后面应该是“介词 of + 动词的-ing 形式”。

7. (c)

课文中使用的动词 suppose 表示“假设”，与选项(c)say 表达同样的含义，如：Say (that)you saw her on the street, what would you do then? (假设你在街上看到她，你会怎么做?)该句中省略了 that。选项(a)Providing that(假如)中的 providing 为连词，用来提出某种先决条件，而不是提出某种假设，如：You can stay, providing you help.(你要是帮忙的话，你就能留下来。)选项(b)On condition that 与选项(a)相同，也是提出某种先决条件，如：She will join us on condition that you also be there.(如果你也在那儿，她就会与我们一起去。)选项(d)Allowing that (承认)并不表示“假设”的意思，故为错误项。

8. (c)

本题考查短语 be incapable of (doing) sth. 的用法。incapable 与 capable 一样，后面需跟“介词 of + (动词的-ing形式) + sth.”，如：He is capable of (doing)anything.(他无所不能。)He is incapable of cheating.(他不会骗人的。)因此选项(c)of predicting 为正确项。其他 3 个选项在结构上都不正确。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中使用的形容词 speculative 表示世界上最好的天气

预报“具有很强的猜测性”，选项(b)guess work(猜测，推测)表达的意思与其相符，因此为正确项。选项(a)certain knowledge(确切的知识)、选项(c)scientific facts(科学事实)和选项(d)accurate calculation(精确的计算)都不是目前最佳天气预报的依据，故均为错误项。

10. (d)

课文中使用的名词grid(坐标方格)说明现代气象模型以一个坐标图来显示。坐标图上布满均衡排列的方格，也就是一种“网状系统”，因此选项(d)network(网状系统)为正确项。选项(a)scale(标尺)、选项(b)balance(天平)和选项(c)line(直线)都与grid所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

11. (b)

本题考查humidity的词义。humidity的意思是“湿度”，也就是空气中所含的水蒸气，因此选项(b)water vapour(水蒸气)为正确项。选项(a)light(光)、选项(c)pressure(压力)和选项(d)heat(热)的意思都与humidity不同，故均为错误项。

12. (d)

课文中使用的动词calculate意即“计算”，与选项(d)work out表达的“计算出”、“得出”的意思相同。选项(a)predicts(预测)、选项(b)foretells(预言)和选项(c)estimates(估计)都不具有“计算”的含义。

Lesson 15
Secrecy in industry
工业中的秘密

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The atmosphere of secrecy in which research is carried out, and the lack of freedom which an individual research worker has.
2. Some processes in chemical industries are never patented at all because they are kept as secret processes.
3. Some firms are reluctant to borrow books from libraries because they are afraid that agents of other firms will be able to find out what research they are undertaking.

词汇练习参考答案

The fact that she cannot use a word processor may *weigh heavily against* her when she tries to get an office job.
All the office plants have died through *lack* of water.
There is very little *effective contact* between the staff of the two universities.
If we make any changes that will have any effect at all, they must be *fundamental* changes.
The metal goes through a number of separate *processes* before it can be shaped into window frames.

F. 1. *Lest* anyone should worry that this will lead to price increases, let me reassure them that it will not.

2. Mother bought a lot of milk *for fear* we wouldn't be able to get any for a few more days.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. He is such a kind person that he is always thinking of ways to help his *fellow men*.

2. I try to do as much work as all my *fellow students*.

3. The leader of the trade union tried to persuade his *fellow workers* not to go on strike.

B. 1. I'll help you *in so far as* I can. (in so far as = to the extent that)

2. She goes to the city *often enough* to know where the best places are to eat.

3. The temperature rose *to such an extent* that the firemen had to leave the burning building.

4. There have been so many complaints about the department that *the whole nature of* their business will have to be investigated.

C. 1. performing it, completing it

2. go on, continue

3. filled with a strong feeling or excitement

4. bring to a successful end

D. If they tell you to come on such and such a day, don't come if it's not convenient.

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

本文讨论有关工业秘密的问题。正是由于害怕研究成果被其他公司窃取，所以许多研究都处于保密之中，因此选项(c)can lead to secrecy in scientific research(会导致科研的保密性)为正确项。文中说由于保密，科研人员的自由受到限制，而不是科研的自由受到限制，因此选项(a)leads to lack of freedom in scientific research(导致科研缺乏自由)为错误项。文中讲到，对于进行一般和基础研究的公司来说，不保密对他们更有利，因此他们没必要害怕工业间谍，所以选项 (b)especially applies to scientific research of a general and fundamental nature(特别适用于一般和基础的科学研究)为错误项。本文谈到的是工业秘密，而非商业秘密，所以选项(d)creates an atmosphere of distrust in business(营造出一种商界的不信任气氛)为错误项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 5 行"The degree of secrecy naturally varies considerably(保密程度自然差别很大)"，得知由于研究项目的性质不同，保密程度也不同，因此选项(a)Some kinds of scientific research are 'more secret' than others(有些科研比其他科研"更保密")为正确项。选项(b)All kinds of scientific research are top secret(所有的科研都是绝密的)、选项(c)Firms never tell anyone anything about their scientific research(公司从不将他们的科研情况告诉任何人)和选项(d)Scientific research workers never speak to

each other(科研人员从不相互交谈)均与文中所述意义不符,故为错误项。

3. (d)

根据课文第7~8行"Yet a great many processes depending on such research are sought for with complete secrecy until the stage at which patents can be taken out(然而,依赖这种研究的很多工艺程序是在完全保密的情况下进行的,直到可以取得专利权的阶段为止)",得知公司往往在拥有了科研成果的产权后,才将成果公布于众,所以选项(d) they own the rights to intellectual property before they reveal what they're doing(他们拥有了知识产权之后才公布他们所从事的研究)为正确项。有些基础研究是不保密的,因此并不需要限制所有科研人员的自由,所以选项(a) they limit all those engaged in carrying out scientific research(他们限制所有从事科研的人员的自由)为错误项。如果科研项目需要保密的话,对任何公司都要保密,而不论其大小,所以选项(b) that larger companies can't find out about their scientific research(较大型的公司不可能发现他们的科研情况)为错误项。课文中谈到并不是所有的研究都需要保密,所以选项(c) they are working in an atmosphere of complete secrecy(他们在完全保密的气氛中工作)为错误项。

4. (c)

根据课文第9~10行"This applies particularly to chemical industries, where chance discoveries play a much larger part than they do in physical and mechanical industries(这在化学工业方面尤其突出。同物理和机械工业相比,化学工业中偶然发现的机会要多得多)",得知正是由于在化学研究中有些发现是非常偶然的,所以保密尤为突出,

因此选项(c)increases the need for secrecy(提高了保密的必要性)为正确项。有些公司不愿从图书馆借科技图书是怕别的公司的间谍根据他们所借阅的图书猜测出他们正在从事何种研究,而并不是说科研偶然发现的可能性使他们难以从图书馆借到科技图书,因此选项(a)make it difficult to obtain scientific books from libraries(使得很难从图书馆借到科学书籍)为错误项。科研偶然发现的可能性并不可能鼓励其他情报人员的竞争,因此选项(b)encourages competition from other agents(鼓励其他情报人员的竞争)为错误项。科研偶然发现的可能性并不意味着必须取得专利权,所以选项(d)means that every discovery has to be patented(意味着每一项发现都得取得专利权)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

本题考查定语从句。课文中使用的是 in which 引导的定语从句。英语中介词可以置于关系代词之前(较正式),也可以置于跟随在该关系代词之后的定语从句之后(非正式)。当介词置于定语从句之后时,关系代词可以省略,比较:This is the room in which I was born.(这是我出生的房间。)This is the room (that) I was born in.(译文同上。)综上所述,选项(d)it is carried out in 为正确项,其中省略了关系代词 that。选项(a)which it is carried out 中缺少介词 in。选项(b)which is carried out 中缺少介词 in 和代词 it。选项(c)it is carried out 中缺少介词 in。

6. (d)

课文中使用的从属连词 in so far as 意思是"至……程度"、"只要",如:In so far as we can believe these facts we will use them.(只要我们相信这些事实,我们就会利用它

们。)选项(d)To the extent that 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)With regard to(关于)、选项(b)As well as(不仅)和选项(c)Supposing that(假设)所表达的意思都与 in so far as 不同,故均为错误项。

7. (b)

课文中使用的是 such...that 的结构。该结构表示"达到……程度以至于",that 引导的是结果状语从句,如:This can be such a gradual process that you are not aware of it happening.(这会是一个如此渐进的过程,以至于你不会察觉出它的发生。)so...that 也可以表示相同的意思,区别是 such 后面跟随的是名词词组,如 such a gradual process,而 so 后面跟随的是一个形容词,如: We were so angry that we asked to see the manager.(我们非常生气,于是我们要求见经理。)综上所述,可以确定选项(b)so为正确项。句子中空白处后跟随的是形容词 general,不能用 such,因此选项(a)such 为错误项。so that 引导目的状语从句,如:He has to earn lots of money so that he can support his large family.(他必须得挣很多钱才能养活他那个大家庭。)此外句子中已经有了一个 that,再用 so that结构就错了,因此选项(c)so that 为错误项。选项(d)in order that(为了)也用来引导一个目的状语从句,而不是结果状语从句,如:I arrived early in order that I might not miss anything.(我到得很早,以免错过什么。)

8. (a)

本题考查动词 keep 的时态和语态。课文中使用的是一般现在时和被动语态,但句子的主语是"工艺过程",而本题的主语是指公司的 they,应该使用主动语态,因此选项(a) keep 为正确项。选项(b) kept 时态不相符。选项(c)are kept 语态不正确。选项(d)are keeping 也是时态

不正确。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

课文中使用的 the lack of freedom 表示“缺乏自由”，the absence of 的意思也可用来表达“缺乏”的含义，如 the absence of proof(缺乏证据)，因此选项(c)absence 为正确项。选项(a)loss(失去)、选项(b)emptiness(空虚)和选项(d)luck(幸运)都与 lack 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的 carrying it out 意即“执行”，选项(a)performing it 所表达的意义与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(b)involving it(涉及到它)、选项(c)betrothed to it(与它订婚)和选项(d)allowing it(允许它)都与 carrying it out 不同义，故均为错误项。

11. (c)

课文中说对于搞一般性和基础研究的公司来说，不保密更为有利。选项(c)in their best interests(对他们最有利)符合该义，因此为正确项。选项(a)with their knowledge(就他们的知识而言)、选项(b)on their account(为了他们的利益，为了他们的缘故)和选项(d)for their benefit(为了他们的利益)均非“对……有利”的意思。

12. (a)

课文中使用的名词 extent 表示“程度”，与选项(a)degree 表达的意思相同，如 to a high degree(在很大程度上)。选项(b)process(过程)、选项(c)limit(界限)和选项(d)period(阶段)都不能表达“程度”的意思。

Lesson 16
The modern city
现代城市

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. A modern factory is similar to a large city because it has been designed and built to make money and with no regard for the humans who have to work in it.
2. The construction of huge skyscrapers was the direct result of the need to earn the largest amount of money from each square foot of ground.
3. They fail to realize that they are deprived of the necessities of life.

词汇练习参考答案

The doctors could find no *physiological* cause for his illness, and decided it must be psychosomatic.

The authorities spent so much money decorating the hospital that they *neglected* many of the real needs of patients.

The company has *expanded* its operations in Scotland by building a new factory there.

Living in a monastery in the mountains always seems to me to be a rather *artificial mode of existence*.

She has no *regard* at all for anyone else's feelings.

During the summer the hotel prices all its rooms differently to earn *the maximum income* according to size and quality of decor.

Even though the bridge was not large, the *construction* still took something like three years.

He annoys me because, although he isn't very successful, he's always making *banal* remarks about other people's achievements.

Many old European cities contain beautiful large buildings which might be described as 'edifices', but not necessarily '*monstrous edifices*'.

After the accident in the chemical laboratories, the building was filled with *toxic* fumes for twelve hours.

Just before Christmas the streets of London are *thronged ceaselessly* by great crowds.

段落练习参考答案

A. Statement 1 best expresses the main idea of the passage because, from the first sentence which points out that workers have effectively been ignored in the construction and organization of a factory, the text builds up to the statement that the modern city 'has not been planned for the good of its inhabitants'.

B. See text.

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. He is attending English classes in order that *he may make himself understood in Australia*.

2. She works very hard in order that *she may gain promotion soon*.

3. The Prime Minister has gone abroad in order that *he may consult directly with the leaders of other countries*.

C. 1. I didn't know how many mushrooms my mother wanted, so I collected *as many as possible*.

2. *As far as possible* the company tries to deal with each individual complaint on its merits.

3. She didn't want everyone to know she was leaving, so she told *as few people as possible*.

4. She always wants to pay *as little as possible* for anything she buys.

D. 1. Most teachers exert considerable *influence upon* their students.

2. All of his judgments are *based on* a lifetime of experience in the profession.

3. You might think that the students are noisy and badly-behaved but that's not *the true nature of* most of them.

4. When he became rich, he changed his whole *mode of* life.

5. I have very little *regard for* people who live on state benefits.

6. His answers to your requests will *depend on* how he's feeling.

7. They are faced with *the necessity of* buying a new car because their old one breaks down so often now.

8. The public transport system is *deprived of* the money needed for modernization.

Contemporary means 'belonging to the present time or of or belonging to the same (stated) time': *Contemporary reports of past events are often more interesting than a modern historian's view of them.*

4. The verb *earn* means 'get money by working': *How much does he earn a month?*

   The verb *win* means 'gain or receive as the result of victory or success in any kind of competition': *I won £10 on the Lottery last week.* It also means 'be the best or first in a battle, competition, race, etc.': *He finally won the tennis match after two hours.*

5. The verb *please* means 'make someone happy': *The girl in the shop is always eager to please everyone.*

   The verb *beg* means 'ask (for) with great eagerness or anxiety': *She begged her mother to allow her to go to the pop concert.*

B. 1. The firm pays its company representatives a car mileage allowance which at the moment is 45p *per mile*.

2. I once drove my old car at 95 miles *per hour*.

3. If we all go on the trip, the cost *per person* will work out at exactly £10.

4. This particular material costs £5 *per yard*.

5. That restaurant has a 10 *per cent* service charge.

C. 1. pressed

2. came together in large numbers

3. put, pushed, filled

D. necessities, masses, buses, gases, lorries, taxicabs/taxis, cities

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 2 ~ 3 行"Modern industry is based on the conception of the maximum production at lowest cost(现代工业的基本概念是:以最低成本获取最多产品)",可以清楚地得知现代工业的目的正如选项(a)produce as much as possible as cheaply as possible(尽可能便宜地生产尽可能多的产品)所述。选项(b)ignore the mental and physical state of the workers(忽略工人的精神和生理状况)并不是现代工业的目的,而是现代工业所造成的后果。选项(c)enable individuals to earn as much money as possible(使一些个人尽可能多赚钱)是现代生产带来的必然结果,而不是目的,因此为错误项。选项(d)achieve maximum production regardless of cost(不计成本地获取最多产品)与"以最低成本获取最多产品"不符,故为错误项。

2. (b)

根据课文第 4~6 行"...without giving any consideration to the effects produced on the individuals and on their descendants by the artificial mode of existence imposed by the factory(……工厂把一种人为的生存方式强加给工人,却不顾及这种生存方式给工人及其后代带来的影响)",得知工厂要求人们以强加给他们的生活方式生活,所以选项(b)lead an unnatural way of life(过着不尽人情的生活)为正确项。选项(a)run machines without thinking(不假思索地操纵机器)、选项(c)ignore the

effects produced on individuals(忽略对个人所产生的影响)和选项(d)take into account the true nature of human beings(顾及人的真实本性)都不是工厂对工人的要求。

3. (c)

根据课文第10行"Civilized men like such a way of living(文明人喜欢这样一种生活方式)",得知居住在现代城市中的一些人乐于住在里面,因此选项(c)take pleasure in living in the conditions a city imposes(喜欢住在城市所强加于的环境之中)为正确项。选项(a)try to obtain maximum income from property(试图靠资产获得最大的收入)并不是城市居民的做法。应对建造摩天大楼负责的是现代工业,而不是居住在城里的人,因此选项(b)are responsible for the shape and dimension of skyscrapers(对摩天大楼的形状和大小负责)为错误项。并不是居住在城市里的人向租房人提供办公室和公寓,而是那些摩天大楼,因此选项(d)offer tenants offices and apartments that please them(向租房人提供令他们满意的办公室和公寓)为错误项。

4. (c)

根据课文第10－11行"While they enjoy the comfort and banal luxury of their dwelling...(在他们享受自己住宅的舒适和庸俗的豪华时……)",得知作者虽然认为现代城市剥夺了人们生活所必须的东西,但是他并不否认现代城市所提供的舒适和豪华的生活条件,因此选项(c)are comfortable and luxurious(是舒适和豪华的)为正确项。并不是现代城市环境导致摩天大楼的建造,因此选项(a)have caused the construction of gigantic buildings(导致建造庞大的建筑物)为错误项。被剥夺了生活必需品的是居住在城市里的人,而不是城市环境,因此选项(b)are

deprived of the necessities of life(被剥夺了生活必需品)为错误项。文中只谈到现代城市剥夺了城里人的生活必需品,没有说对居住者是有害的,因此选项(d)are actively harmful to the inhabitants(对居住者是非常有害的)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (a)

本题考查使用“介词 for + 名词/代词 + 动词不定式”作句子的目的状语,选项(a)for individuals to 为正确项。选项(b)so as individuals 中的 so as 后面必须直接跟动词不定式,而不能跟名词,如:I went to live in France so as to learn French.(我去法国居住,以便学习法语。)选项(c)for individuals 中缺少 to。选项(d)in order individuals 中 in order 后面直接跟动词不定式,而不直接跟名词,如: She was sent to England in order to be educated.(她被送到英国去接受教育。)in order 也可以引导目的状语从句,但后面必须直接跟 that 从句, 如:Let us spend a few moments in silence in order that we remember those who died to preserve our freedom.(让我们默哀片刻,以缅怀那些为保护我们的自由而牺牲了的人们。)

6. (d)

课文中使用的是 without any idea of,意即“根本不考虑”,与此相同的表达是选项(d)no。选项(a)little 用于不可数名词前,表示“几乎没有”的意思,并不是“完全没有”的意思。选项(b)few 用于可数名词前,表示“几乎没有”的意思,也并不是“完全没有”的意思。选项(c)some表示“一些”,并不是没有,因此为错误项。

7. (d)

本题考查定语从句中关系代词的用法。课文中使用的是

关系副词 where。用 where 时不能使用任何表示地点或位置的介词,而用关系代词 which 时要在定语从句句首或句末用相关的介词,如:This is the place where (in which) I grew up.(这是我生长的地方。)所以选项(d)in which 为正确项。由于表示“在某座大楼里”应用介词 in 而不能用其他介词,所以选项(a)at which、选项(b)on which 和选项(c)to which 均为错误项。

8. (b)

课文中使用的是由从属连词 while 引导的让步状语从句,而不是时间状语从句,表示“尽管”之义。因此选项(b)Though为正确项。选项(a)During 为介词,不能引导状语从句。选项(c)At the time 也不能引导状语从句。选项(d)When 只能引导时间状语从句,而不能引导让步状语从句,因此为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

课文中使用的名词 influence 意即“影响”,选项(a)effect 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)affection(感情,喜爱)、选项(c)extent(程度)和选项(d)measurement(测量)与 influence 意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的动词 expand 意即“发展”、“扩大”,选项(b)grown(发展)表达与其同样的含义,因此为正确项。选项(a)grown up 表示“长大”、“成长”,而非“发展”的意思,因此为错误项。当 grow 表示“发展”时,为不及物动词,不能用于被动语态,故选项(c)been grown 为错误项。选项 (d)been grown up 所表达的意思和语态均不正确。

11. (a)

课文中使用的 deprive,意即“剥夺”,与动词 deny 所表达

的意思相同，如：They were denied admittance.（他们被拒之门外。）所以选项(a)denied为正确项。选项(b)refused（拒绝）、选项(c)discarded(抛弃)和选项(d)ignored(忽视)均与 deprived 所表达的意思不符，故为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的短语动词 consist of 意即"包括"、"由……组成"，与选项(c)comprises 表示的意思相同，如：The advisory board comprises six members.（顾问委员会由6名成员组成。）也可以用 be comprised of 表达，如：The United States is comprised of fifty states.（美国由50个州组成。）选项(a)consists 后面应该用介词 of。选项(b)cohabits(同居)和选项(d)constitutes（指定，任命）与 consist of 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

Lesson 17

A man-made disease

人为的疾病

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The rabbit is regarded as a serious pest in Australia because it causes devastation by burrowing and by eating food which sheep and cattle should live on.
2. It proved impossible to exterminate rabbits completely from Australia because they developed a certain degree of resistance to the disease.
3. *Myxomatosis* was introduced into Europe through a French physician who introduced it on his estate in order to get rid of the wild rabbits.

词汇练习参考答案

It was very *enterprising* of the boys to see a gap in the market and set up a business like that.

When the police and fire brigade finally arrived at the fire, they found a scene of complete *devastation*.

We watched a line of soil moving in front of our eyes and realized that a mole was *burrowing* under the grass.

In the past, deserts have been created by animals *devouring the herbage* until nothing can grow.

My niece is rather *susceptible* to colds and flu.

The doctors were amazed the man survived because the injuries that he sustained in the accident are usually *fatal*.

There have been a number of quite serious flu *epidemics* in Britain in recent years.

When the lake was poisoned with waste chemicals, the fish population was *drastically reduced*.

A large number of animals and birds have been *completely exterminated* during the course of this century.

The old man *bequeathed* most of his estate to his only grandson.

Within *the confines of his estate* the local lord of the manor believes he can do just about whatever he likes.

Cows, pigs and sheep are *domesticated* animals.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. When introduced into Australia—no natural enemies: multiplied.

2. Overran continent: caused terrible damage—burrowing and devouring plants.

3. However, susceptible to *myxomatosis*, fatal virus disease.

4. Animals infected and let loose; caused epidemic.

5. Disease also carried by type of mosquito.

6. Both methods helped reduce population—though impossible to exterminate rabbits completely.

B. When Australia acquired the rabbit from Europe, it became a pest. When Europe acquired *myxomatosis* from Australia, it acquired a pestilence. A French physician

introduced the disease on his estate and it spread from there to the rest of the country and then to Britain. In France, the rabbit is not a pest, but a sport and a valuable food supply. In Britain, on the other hand, the wild rabbit is a pest, while tame rabbits form the basis of the fur industry. The question was: Could man control this artificial disease?

C. [The balance of nature.]

The balance of nature is very delicate and we have only begun to realize in this past century just how delicate it is. Let us take the case of forests. People in the past cut down trees to use as fuel or to use for the construction of houses, ships and so on—apparently with little regard for the damage they may have been doing to the environment. Often they replanted the area, but was that because they instinctively recognized the need to replace what they had taken away or damaged, or simply because they knew that they would need more wood later? In other words, were our forefathers concerned about the balance of nature? Or were they simply concerned that they might run out of things that Nature could provide? People in the past probably *were* more in touch with Nature and they knew how important the balance of nature was. We seem to have lost that instinct in the twentieth century. But natural disasters (like the extinction of certain species of animals and birds) have begun to make us realize the effect of cutting down forests with no regard for the wild life or for the planet as a whole. (202 *words*)

question or problem, etc.': *Scientists have now discovered that this disease is carried by rats.*

The verb *invent* means 'make or produce (esp. a new or useful thing or idea) for the first time': *Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.*

2. A *disease* /dɪ'zi:z/ is 'an illness or unhealthy condition caused by infection, a disorder, etc., but not by an accident': *She has suffered from a rare heart disease for many years.*

   The noun *decease* /dɪ'si:s/ is a formal or legal word meaning 'death': *Upon your decease the house will pass to your wife.*

3. A *basis* means 'the facts, principles, statements, etc. from which something is formed, started or developed': *The series of lectures he gave finally formed the basis of the book he wrote on the subject.*

   A *base* is 'the lowest part of something, esp. the part on which something stands': *There was some strange carving on the base of the marble column.*

4. *Apparent* means 'easily seen or understood': *It soon became apparent why he had left the area so suddenly.*

   Obvious means 'easy to see and understand, clear, must be recognized': *There were disadvantages to his plan which were obvious to us all.*

   (*Apparent* and *obvious* are often interchangeable.)

5. The verb *acquire* means 'gain or come to possess, esp. by one's own work, skill or action, and often over a long period of time': *How did you acquire your skill of using a keyboard?*

The verb *obtain* means 'become the owner of, esp. by menas of effort or planning': *I haven't been able to obtain that CD anywhere.* (The verb tends to be a little formal.)

6. One meaning of *degree* is 'a point on an imaginary line used for measuring or comparing qualities, feelings, abilities, etc.': *The minister expressed a degree of optimism about the state of the economy.*

   A *rank* is 'a level of relative value, ability, importance, etc., on a scale, esp. the official position someone holds in the army, navy, etc.': *That man attained the rank of captain after only a few years in the navy.*

B. We were woken *in the early hours* of the morning by cats fighting in the street.

   In the early years of the king's reign, the country enjoyed a period of peace.

   The great violinist Yehudi Menuhin learned to play *at a very early age*.

C. The old barn on that farm is *overrun* with rats.

   You can't *overtake* on that bend: you can't see what's coming from the other direction.

   She's very tired because she's been *overdoing* things at work.

   The teacher *overlooked* my rudeness once, but warned me never to be rude again.

D. 1. Don't *spread the butter* too thickly on my sandwiches.

   2. This butter *spreads* very easily straight from the fridge.

E. The spelling of *-able* words is always a problem. When, to create an adjective, we add *-able* to a verb or a noun which

ends in a silent 'e', we usually drop the 'e' (*value — valuable*, *love — lovable*). However, in British spelling, the 'e' is kept in words ending in '-ceable' and '-geable' where the final 'e' affects the sound of the preceding consonant: *trace — traceable*, *manage — manageable*.

movable, lovable, peaceable, knowledgeable, changeable, serviceable, believable

F. This CD is not the one I borrowed from you: it's *my own*.

I didn't stay with the others all the time because I wanted to spend some time *on my own*.

I don't need an umbrella because I've got one *of my own*.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 2～3 行"... so that it multiplied with that promiscuous abandon characteristic of rabbits(……因此便以兔子所特有的杂乱交配迅猛繁殖起来)",得知正是兔子本身的繁殖能力使得兔子迅速地在澳大利亚繁殖起来,因此选项(b) breed rapidly(迅速地繁殖)为正确项。选项(a) were unwisely introduced by enterprising settlers (由富有创业精神的移民不明智地引进)并不是兔子数量在澳大利亚迅速增长的原因。选项(c) overran the continent(在整个大陆泛滥成灾)是兔子快速繁殖的结果,而不是快速增长的原因。澳大利亚和新西兰本身就没有兔子的天敌,因此谈不到兔子战胜它们的天敌,因此选项(d) overcame their natural enemies in the Antipodes

(战胜了它们澳大利亚和新西兰的天敌)为错误项。

2. (b)

科学家们首先采用的方法是让染病的动物在洞内乱跑，而后又发现有一种蚊子可以将该病传染给兔子，所以科学家们共采用了两种方法，因此选项(b)two ways 为正确项，而其他 3 个选项均不正确。

3. (a)

根据课文第 8～10 行"So while the rest of the world was trying to get rid of mosquitoes, Australia was encouraging this one. It effectively spread the disease all over the continent and drastically reduced the rabbit population(因此，世界上其他地方在设法消灭蚊子的时候，澳大利亚却在促使这种蚊子大量繁殖。蚊子把这种疾病扩散到整个澳洲大陆，效果甚佳，结果兔子的数目大为减少)"，得知选项(a)of the mosquito(由于蚊子的缘故)为正确项。选项(b)of the rabbit(由于兔子的缘故)并不是使该传染病迅速蔓延的原因。选项(c)scientists let infected animals loose in burrows(由于科学家让染病的动物在洞内乱跑)是使疾病传染给兔子的方法之一，但并不是使该病迅速在澳大利亚蔓延的主要方法。选项(d)Australia encouraged diseased rabbits to migrate to other places(澳大利亚促使染病的兔子迁移到其他地方)并不是导致该疾病迅速蔓延的原因。

4. (d)

课文的最后一段讲述了原本作为法国人的猎物和英国人赚钱手段的兔子没有了，该传染病给欧洲带来的是不幸，因此选项(d)a curse(祸害)为正确项。在欧洲被驯养的是兔子，而不是多发性黏液瘤，因此选项(a)domesticated(被驯养)为错误项。在任何地方多发性黏液瘤都是一种

疾病，因此选项(b)a disease(疾病)为错误项。该传染病使得英国的养兔业受到打击，不可能有利可图，因此选项(c)profitable(有利可图的)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (a)

课文中使用的是用 so that 引导的结果状语从句。该句为并列句，选项(a)and as a result it multiplied 为正确项。为表述前后两句的因果关系，该项中用了一个介词短语 as a result。选项(b)in order to multiply 所表达的是目的，而不是结果，故为错误项。选项(c)so that it might multiply 中的 so that 引导的是目的状语从句，而不是结果状语从句。区别这两种从句主要根据语义以及从句中是否有情态助动词。通常有情态助动词的是目的状语从句。选项(d)because it multiplied 为原因状语从句。

6. (b)

本题考查动词时态的用法。该句为并列句，是对过去发生的事情的陈述，连接词 and 连接的是两个动词的过去式，因此选项(b)burrowed 为正确项。其他 3 个选项的时态或动词形式均不正确。

7. (b)

该句询问的是地方性流行病是如何造成的，因此应该用选项(b)How。其他 3 个选项所用的疑问词均与后面的回答不符，故为错误项。

8. (d)

课文中使用的是表示“可能性”的情态助动词 could，选项(d)中的形容词 possible 也可用来表示“可能性”，因此为正确项。选项(a)potent（强大的）、选项(b)able(有能力的)和选项(c)enabled(使……能够)的语义均不正确，故为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

课文中使用的动词 devour 意即"吃掉"、"消耗掉"，选项(c)consuming(消费、消耗掉)在此表示的意思与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)burrowing into 指"打洞"，该句中的 herbage 为"牧草"，兔子不可能在牧草中打洞，故为错误项。选项(b)infecting(传染)和选项(d)digging(挖)与 devour 所表示的意思不同，因此均为错误项。

10. (d)

课文中使用的是 letting them loose，意即"让它们乱跑"、"将它们释放"，与其相同的表达方法还有 set sb. loose 或 turn sb. loose，因此选项(d)turning 为正确项。其他 3 项中的动词不能与 loose 搭配，故均为错误项。

11. (c)

课文中使用的 a degree of resistance to this disease(对这种疾病的抵抗程度)，选项(c)withstand(承受，抵御)表达的意思与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)react to(对……有反应)、选项(b)prevent(防止，预防)和选项(d)oppose(反对)所表达的均非"抗病"的意思，故为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是动词 bequeath，意即"把……传给"、"遗赠给"，是欧洲人将兔子(为害虫)传给澳大利亚，也就是说澳大利亚从欧洲人那里承袭的兔子这种有害生物。选项(a)inherited(继承，承袭)表达出了上述含义，因此为正确项。选项(b)obtained(获得)、选项(c)assumed(假设)和选项(d)claimed(声称)都无法表达 bequeath 所表达的意思，故为错误项。

Lesson 18
Porpoises
海豚

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

Porpoises possess a curiosity with anything that is alive (*or* with anything living).

词汇练习参考答案

In the UK it's a common *superstition* that walking under a ladder is unlucky.

Certain land animals have been known to stand *in defensive formation* in order to protect their young or their territory.

'I know *how* she committed the murder,' said the detective, 'but if her *motive* wasn't greed or jealousy, I still can't understand *why*.'

The football pitch was *waterlogged*, so the match had to be called off.

Someone threw a bottle and then a mass fight *ensued* between the rival fans.

I just couldn't put the book down because I was *intrigued* to know what happened in the end.

Those people are *constantly* having arguments.

There was a lot of pushing and *shoving* to get on the bus.

The pig kept *sticking his snout* through the wire fence.

As the boy bent over to tie his shoelaces, the goat lowered its head, charged and *butted* him where it hurt!

The moment he *recovers his equilibrium* on the beam, he falls off again.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. Bird, fish or beast—porpoise intrigued.
   2. Constantly chasing, playing with turtles: example—turtle across tank.
   3. Young porpoises enjoy turning over large turtles.
   4. Porpoises often in pairs: knock turtle to bottom. Finally gives up.

B. There is a superstition among mariners that porpoises will save drowning men or even protect them from sharks. Marine Studio biologists have suggested that, however intelligent porpoises might be, this is probably not true. When porpoises have pushed men ashore, the biologists say, they have probably done it out of curiosity or simply for sport. Porpoises were once photographed pushing a waterlogged mattress to the shore. And as for saving men from sharks, curiosity may have attracted them because the smell of food (a man) attracted sharks. Porpoises and sharks are natural enemies and it is possible that they fought on such an occasion.

C. [Intelligence in animals.]

Animal lovers often say things like this: 'Our dog/cat/parrot/pony... is very intelligent, you know. He can ask for food/balance a ball on his nose/come when you call

his name...' Animal lovers, then, like to think that animals and birds are endowed with intelligence, but are they? Many animals, even wild carnivores like lions and tigers, can be trained to perform 'tricks' of various kinds. In the same way, certain animals in the wild can 'do tricks' such as lifting logs or picking off bark to find insects, or 'disguising' themselves to deceive their prey. Certain animals and birds, then, might be 'clever', but are they 'intelligent'? And what about creatures which have a reputation for being intelligent, such as owls, which in the UK are often described as 'wise'? In this instance, it has been proved that the owl is in fact a particularly stupid bird, and far from 'intelligent'! The problem really is with the meaning of intelligence and intelligent. One dictionary definition of 'intelligent' is 'having or showing powers of learning, reasoning or understanding, especially to a high degree'. Perhaps, however, intelligence should include showing signs of original thought or problem-solving, and it seems that few, if any, animals are capable of that.

(217 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. I can't remember *posting that letter last week, although I'm sure I did.*

2. You should avoid *speaking to those girls if you don't get on with them.*

3. Will you stop *asking me so many questions*?

4. Fancy *meeting you here!*

4. *Indignity* is 'a state or situation that makes one feel ashamed or feel loss of respect': *I suffered the indignity of having to apologize in front of all those people.*

   Disrespect is 'a lack of respect or politeness': *I'm sorry to say that he often shows disrespect for his elders.*

5. The verbs *raise* and *rise* are commonly confused.

   Raise is a regular transitive verb meaning 'lift, push or move upwards': *She raised her finger to her lips as a sign for silence.*

   The irregular vereb *rise* (*rose—risen*) is intransitive and means 'move from a lower to a higher level or position, go up, or get higher': *The river is rising after the rain.*

6. A *game* is 'a form of play or sport, or an example of this': *Let's have a game of cards.*

   A *play* is 'a piece of writing performed by actors in a theatre or on TV or radio': *The college drama society are going to perform a play written by one of the students.*

7. The two adverbs *eventually* and *finally* are very close in meaning, both mean 'at last, in the end'.

   However, *eventually* implies that 'at the end of a continuing process': *After many attempts she eventually managed to get promotion.*

   And *finally* means 'at last, after a long period of time or after a series of difficulties': *After several delays, the plane finally left at six o'clock.*

B. 1. *likely* = probably

2. *unlikely* = improbable

3. *likely* (here) = not at all probable, since it is said to show that one disbelieves what someone has said

4. *likely* = suitable to give good results or to succeed

C. The men in the castle finally *drove off* their attackers.

When the sheep got into the shop, it took four people to *drive* them *out*.

The defending army *drove* the attackers *back* into the sea.

The shortage of bread will probably *drive* prices *up*.

D. 1. They *are* constantly *after*... = They are constantly chasing...

2. The game *is over*. = The game is finished.

3. He's *out*. = He is away. /He is not here.

4. When will he *be back*? = When will he be returning?

5. The match *is off*. = The match has been cancelled.

6. The fire *is out*. = The fire is no longer burning.

7. What'*s on*... = What film is showing...

E. 1. When the police surrounded the house, the two men finally *gave themselves up*.

2. The chemical compound *gave off* an awful smell.

3. I wish my friend would *give back* the money he owes me.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 7～8 行"it may have been because curiosity

attracted them(它们可能是出于好奇)",得知作者可能认为海豚出于对人感兴趣才去救人,而不是出于救人的动机,因此选项(b)believes that porpoises have a special interest in humans(认为海豚对人特别感兴趣)为正确项。选项(a)doubts whether porpoises have a special relationship with humans(怀疑海豚是否与人类有着特殊的关系)并不是作者的看法。作者并不是要证明海豚区别不出人和床垫,而是用床垫来证明海豚并不是出于救人的动机而救人,因此选项(c)thinks that porpoises can't tell the difference between a human and a mattress(认为海豚区别不出人和床垫的差别)为错误项。鲨鱼将人作为它的一顿美餐而进行追逐,而不是海豚,因此选项(d)thinks that porpoises are attracted by humans as a possible meal(认为海豚是将人当成可能到口的食物而受其吸引)为错误项。

2. (a)

本题考查推测能力。文章的陈述试图说明海豚对人类特别感兴趣,因此选项(a)take a special interest in us(对我们特别感兴趣)为正确项。选项(b)are as intelligent as we are(像我们一样聪明)并不是文章所要表达的观点。选项(c)always save humans who are drowning(总是拯救那些要淹死的人)并不是事实。选项(d)always protect humans from sharks(总是保护人类不受鲨鱼的伤害)也并非文章所要表达的看法。

3. (b)

课文的最后一段描述了水族馆中海豚戏弄海龟的情景,它们完全是出于好奇和好玩,因此选项(b)they like to play(它们喜欢玩耍)为正确项。海豚戏弄海龟并不是为了吃它,而是为了玩耍,因此选项(a)they are natural

enemies(它们是天敌)为错误项。海龟之所以任由海豚戏弄，是因为出于无奈，而不是喜欢被虐待，因此选项(c)turtles enjoy being badly treated(海龟喜欢被虐待)为错误项。选项(d)they often share an oceanarium(它们常常同在一个水族馆)并不是海豚戏弄海龟的原因。

4. (c)

通过课文最后一段的描述，我们了解到海豚戏弄海龟的整个过程。在这个过程中，海龟被翻过来后，起初还竭力想站起来，经过几次后就放弃了，这说明海龟也参与了这场游戏，因此选项(c)Turtles seem to take part in this game played by porpoises(海龟似乎也参与了海豚们玩的游戏)为正确项。海豚只是同海龟玩耍，而并不杀死它们，因此选项(a)Porpoises try to kill turtles by lifting their shells(海豚试图通过将海龟的壳顶起而杀死海龟)为错误项。游戏结束后，海龟就可以站起来，因此选项(b)Porpoises never allow turtles to stand up(海豚从不让海龟站起来)为错误项。选项(d)Turtles don't feel any pain when they're ill-treated by porpoises(海龟被海豚戏弄时并不感到痛苦)文中并未提及，也为错误。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

该句所要表达的是海员中流传的迷信说法已经由来已久，现在还在流传，故应该使用现在完成时态，因此选项(d)has lasted a long time 为正确项。选项(a)was very common(非常流行)的时态有误，所表达的意思也与文中不符。选项(b)has been very long 中的 long 只有在下列情况下可以单独用来表示"时间长"：(1)作副词时，如：Are you staying long?（你要呆很久吗?)(2)用于 too 的后面或 enough 的前面，如：He's been here too long.(他在这

儿已经很久了。)You've been here long enough to know what we're like.(你在这里呆了这么久,足以知道我们是什么样的人了。)否则必须用 a long time 表示"时间长",如:We may be here a long time.(我们可能在这里呆很久。)因此该项为错误项。选项(c)existed long ago 的时态不正确。

6.(c)

课文中使用的 however intelligent(无论多么聪明)与 no matter how intelligent 所表达的意思相同,因此选项(c)No matter how 为正确项。选项(a)Regardless that(不考虑,不关心)的语义不符。选项(b)Whatever 后不能跟形容词。选项(d)Whether 引导让步状语从句,后面不能直接跟形容词。

7.(d)

本题考查动词时态的一致性。该句为带有让步状语从句的复合句。课文中使用的是虚拟语气 Whether it be...,这里也可以不用虚拟语气,因此选项(d)is 为正确项。其他 3 个选项所用时态都与主句的动词时态不一致。

8.(c)

英语中副词 hardly 与连词 when 连用,表达"几乎还未……就……"的含义,如:Hardly had he uttered the words when he began laughing.(他话还没出口就开始笑起来。)因此选项(c)when 为正确项。其他 3 个选项中的连词都不能与 hardly 连用。

Vocabulary 词汇

9.(c)

课文中使用的名词是 scent(香味),选项(c)smell(嗅到的气味)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)odour 多指不好闻的气味,故为错误项。选项(b)perfume(香料,香水,浓

郁的香气)与 scent 的意义不同,因此为错误项。选项(d)aroma(芳香)特指花香,故为错误项。

10.(c)

课文中使用的 be intrigued with 意即"对……感兴趣",be fascinated with 也指"对……感兴趣"、"被……所吸引",如:He was fascinated with the spectacle of a rocket launching.(他被火箭发射的情景吸引。)因此选项(c)fascinated为正确项。选项(a)repelled(击退)的意思与 intrigued 不同,为错误项。选项(b)attracted(吸引)后面应该跟介词 to,而不是 with,如:He was attracted to her.(他被她吸引住了。)选项(d)puzzled(迷惑不解)与 intrigued 所表达的意思不符,因此为错误项。

11.(b)

课文中使用的是动词 raise,选项(b)lifting(举起,抬起)在此与 raise 同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)rising 为不及物动词,意即"升起"、"上升",与 raise 不同,故为错误项。选项(c)arousing 的意思是"唤醒",如:He aroused me from a deep sleep.(他将我从熟睡中唤醒。)选项(d)elevating指"提升身份",而不用于提升具体的东西,故为错误项。

12.(a)

课文中使用的动词 swoop down,意即"向下猛扑",选项(a)dives(俯冲)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)flies(飞)、选项(c)jumps(跳)和选项(d)falls(落下)与其所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

Lesson 19
The stuff of dreams
话说梦的本质

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The author disproves the idea that we sleep in order to rest our muscles because the body's tissues repair and restore themselves to a degree and they function best when active.
2. Eye-movements during sleep indicate that a person is dreaming.

词汇练习参考答案

The brain performs a very important *function*: it controls the nervous system of the body.

The minister's remarks have led to all kinds of wild *speculations* about the possibility of tax cuts.

The book was written *specifically* for young teenagers.

While this might seem a *plausible hypothesis* no one really thinks that it will work in practice.

There was not enough *evidence* for the court to convict the man of murder.

There is a *fundamental* difference between the policies of the two parties.

The silence of the forest was *punctuated* by occasional bursts of

gunfire.

I didn't recognize the animal at all, but it was black and white, and its behaviour was characterized by *jerky and rapid* movements.

The most recent report on the nuclear accident ten years ago has finally concentrated on the wider *implications* of the incident for the environment.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. Brain needs resting? Two factors against:
   2. Change in pattern of activity during sleep—total amount of activity same.
   3. Second factor more fundamental: Dement's experiments recording eye-movements.
   4. Sleep cycle punctuated by bursts of eye-movements: dreaming.
   5. People woken during eye-movement sleep—personality disorders.
   6. Disturbance of dreaming important. So main function of sleep is to dream?

B. Since we all sleep a great deal, it is fairly clear that sleep must have a function, and this is a problem which has puzzled mankind for thousands of years. We are fairly sure now that the purpose of sleep is not to give the body a rest since we do not have to sleep in order to relax our muscles. This can be done at any time simply by lying or sitting down for short periods. And anyway, body tissues function best when our muscles are active. During sleep itself, the body moves simply in order to prevent muscle inactivity

which would, as we know, result in numbness and cramp.

C. [A dream.]

About a month ago I had a dream which I can still remember very vividly. I don't often remember dreams, but this is one which made a deep impression on me. In the dream I was running along the top of a very high cliff with the beach and sea hundreds of feet below me. As I ran, I kept turning round to see whether I was still being followed, and I was. In fact I was being chased by lots of man-sized dolphins on legs! I know it sounds mad and a little like a cartoon. The dolphins didn't catch me and I just kept running, but I never got to the end of the dream because I woke up thrashing about in bed and sweating. Since I had the dream, I've been wondering what it meant. I know that people who interpret dreams say that they are rarely obvious, that all the images are mixed up and nothing is what it seems. But this dream seemed to reflect the holiday I had just had and the fact that I had to go back to work soon. On my holiday I had seen some dolphins—and I did not want to go back to work. I think the dream reflected my worry — but of course the dream could have meant something completely different. (224 *words*)

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. since 2. for 3. since 4. since

C. We commonly use the verbs *need* and *want* followed by another verb in the *-ing* form. When used like this, the *-ing* form has a passive meaning and could be compared to

important factor in the success of the project is the president's support.

A *fact* is 'something that has happened or is happening, the truth, reality': *Don't give me a long account, just give me the facts.*

B. 1. *dealing with* = about, having as its subject

2. *dealing with* = doing business with

3. *deal with* = take action about, tackle

C. 1. *on end* = without a break, continuously

2. *on purpose* = by design

3. *On the whole* = Generally, Considering everything

4. *on duty* = at work

5. *on leave* = on holiday from government or army service

6. *on any account* = for any reason

7. *on my way* = going, leaving

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 3～4 行"...and one odd finding that makes the problem puzzling is that it looks very much as if sleeping is not simply a matter of giving the body a rest (……一项使人对这个问题感到困惑的奇怪的发现是，睡眠在很大程度似乎并不仅仅是为了使身体得到休息)"，得知选项(b)doesn't seem to be the main function of sleep (似乎并不是睡眠的主要作用)为正确项。选项(a)seems to be the main function of sleep(似乎是睡眠的主要作用)

与课文所述意义正好相反，因此为错误项。使身体得到休息并不意味着睡眠具有某种功能，因此选项(c)means that sleep must have some function(意味着睡眠肯定具有某种功能)为错误项。使身体得到休息的目的并不是防止肌肉活动停止，故选项(d)prevents muscle inactivity(防止肌肉活动停止)为错误项。

2. (b)

根据课文第 9 ~ 12 行"First the electroencephalograph (...) shows that while there is a change in the pattern of activity during sleep, there is no evidence that the total amount of activity is any less(第一点，脑电图记录仪〈……〉显示人在睡眠时大脑活动的方式有变化，但没有迹象表明其活动总量有任何减少)"，得知脑活动在睡眠时并未减少，因此选项(b)doesn't seem to diminish during sleep(似乎在睡眠期间并未减少)为正确项。脑活动并不是一种休息，因此选项(a)is a good indication of the way the body rests during sleep(刚好表明人体在睡眠时的休息方式)为错误项。脑活动本身并不是对睡眠功能的解释，因此选项(c)is a plausible explanation for the function of sleep(是对睡眠功能的一种似乎有理的解释)为错误项。选项(d)must always be recorded during sleep(睡眠期间必须经常得到记录)与课文所述意义不符，故为错误项。

3. (c)

根据课文第 15 ~ 16 行"People woken during these periods of eye-movements, generally reported that they had been dreaming(在眼球活动期间被叫醒的人都说自己在做梦)"，得知睡眠期间眼球的活动表明睡觉的人在做梦，因此选项(c)that a sleeper is dreaming(睡觉人在做梦)为正

确项。选项(a)a person is having a disturbed sleep(某人睡眠不安)、选项(b)sleep is very deep(睡得很沉)和选项(d)that a person is drifting into sleep(某人渐渐进入睡眠)均与课文所述不符,故为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文第 19～21 行"The implications of all this were that it was not the disturbance of sleep that mattered, but the disturbance of dreaming(这一切暗示我们:睡眠受到干扰没关系,而做梦受到干扰是有问题的)",可以得出这样的结论,即做梦是睡眠的重要作用,因此选项(a)The most important function of sleep is dreaming(睡眠最重要的作用是做梦)为正确项。眼球的快速活动表明睡眠者在做梦,因此选项(b)Rapid eye-movement is associated with deep sleep(快速的眼球活动与深度睡眠有关)为错误项。在眼球快速活动时连续被叫醒的人会出现性格失常的现象,因此选项(c)People who experience rapid eye-movements show personality disorders(眼球快速活动的人们都出现性格失常的现象)为错误项。并不是所有受试者被叫醒时都说没做梦,所以选项(d)When people are woken, they don't report any dreams(人们被叫醒时并未说做过任何梦)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

根据该题后面的回答得知,该问题是询问这种推测持续了多久,因此选项(d)How long(多久)为正确项。选项(a)How many(多少)后如果有名词 years 就对了。选项(b)How often(多么经常)指发生的频率,所以为错误项。选项(c)How much 后面跟不可数名词,询问"多少",也为错误项。

6. (a)

课文中使用的 self-repairing 表示"自我恢复的",与 repair oneself 同义,故选项(a)themselves 为正确项。表示"自我恢复"的动词后应该用反身代词,因为主语是复数名词 tissues,所以应该用反身代词 themselves。其他 3 个选项都不正确。

7. (a)

课文中使用的是动词 punctuate(不时介入)的被动语态,因为句子的主语是 the average individual's sleep cycle,表达的是这种睡眠周期被奇怪的眼球活动介入,但是该题中的主语是 Peculiar bursts of eye-movements,该主语是介入者,而不是被介入者,所以应该用主动语态,故选项(a)punctuate 为正确项。其他 3 个选项的时态均不正确。

8. (b)

只有睡眠时才能做梦,因此选项(b)during sleep(睡眠中)为正确项。选项(a)for a while(有一会儿)、选项(c)before they went to sleep(他们睡觉之前)和选项(d)just this moment(正在此时)都不符合逻辑,因此均为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的副词 literally 意即"确实",选项(d)in fact(确实)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)so to speak(可以说是)、选项(b)in history(历史上)和选项(c)and recorded(并记录下来的)都与 literally 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

10. (d)

课文中使用的名词 hypothesis 意即"假说",也就是某种理论,因此选项(d)theory(理论)为正确项。选项(a)conclusion(结论)、选项(b)deduction(推测)和选项

(c)philosophy(哲学)都与 hypothesis 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的形容词 fundamental 意即"根本的"、"首要的"，选项(b)basic 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)obvious(显而易见的)、选项(c)apparent(明显的)和选项(d)acceptable(可接受的)都与 fundamental 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的形容词 jerky 意即"急动的"，常用来形容突然而迅速的活动，选项(c)sudden，irregular(突然而反常的)能够贴切地表达 jerky 的意思，因此为正确项。选项(a)smooth，quick(流畅而迅速的)、选项(b)interrupted(中断的)和选项(d)painful，repeated(痛苦而反复的)都与 jerky 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

Lesson 20
Snake poison
蛇毒

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The author finds it odd that snakes should be capable of manufacturing poison because they could have caught and lived on prey without it.
2. Neurotoxic poison acts on the nerves (*or* nervous system) while haemolytic poison acts on the blood.

词汇练习参考答案

The doctor said that the patient had a fever, but it was only a *mild* fever.

During the process, oil is *converted* into petrol and other products.

This small rock, which came to earth as part of a meteorite, is so strange that it *defies analysis*.

In *the surival competition*, the strongest creatures often come out as winners.

Lions, tigers and leopards are all *carnivores*; rabbits, cows and goats are not.

Knowledge is in some ways *a two-edged weapon* because it can be used for good or evil.

The three students *concocted* a meal from lots of different things that they found in the cupboard and fridge.

Some alcoholic drinks which are made by people in the country are known for their *extreme potency*.

Although the snake had certain *viperine* markings, it wasn't a viper and was quite harmless.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. Reason why snakes manufactured poison: mystery.

2. Over a period saliva converted to poison; defies analysis.

3. Didn't develop through competition to survive: other non-poisonous snakes have survived.

4. Snake poison—merely luxury. One bite—food!

5. Other animals (e. g. cats, carnivores) would benefit from a poisonous bite. Although two-edged sword.

6. But Nature only selected snakes. Why? And why poisons of such potency?

B. The snakes which produce nerve poison include mambas and cobras and the poison is described as neurotoxic. Snakes which produce the blood poison known as haemolytic include vipers and rattlesnakes. Of the two, blood poison is the more unpleasant. While the nerve poison is possibly the earlier and more primitive, the blood poison was a later development. Strangely, it is the nerve poison which acts more quickly on man, but that doesn't tell us much since the purpose of snake poison was clearly not for use against man but for use against prey such as rats and mice.

C. [Our fear of snakes.]

Fear of snakes is probably one of the most common

fears among humans. Even though there are thousands of species of snake which are non-poisonous and which offer no threat to man, we nevertheless automatically think that any snake we find could bite us and inject us with some dreadful poison. Is this fear of snakes then an irrational fear? Not at all. Some people think that it is a very rational fear. In other words, it is right to be afraid of all snakes—or at least to be extremely wary of all snakes. It is wise to work on the assumption that, if many snakes can bite you and inject venom which could kill, then avoid all of them. It is known that many snakes, both poisonous and non-poisonous, possess physiological features which are designed (by Nature) to frighten a prospective enemy: some have a brilliant colour, some a rattle in the tail, most have a hiss and a flickering tongue, and some rear up and spread a hood. The snake may not have a venomous bite, but any of these features says 'Leave me alone'. In the end, even the fact that most snakes look slippery and slimy is enough to make many people afraid of them. (210 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. We can use *could have done* to express possibility or conjecture about past events: *He couldn't have told you the whole story*. We cannot use it to express ability or capacity unless it is to replace 'would have been able to' in conditional sentences.

If my parents had given me some encouragement, I think *I could have succeeded* as a professional musician.

If they hadn't had to catch the 6.30 train back, they *could*

have stayed an hour or two longer.

If she had taken more money with her, she *could have bought* some new clothes.

B. They are not going to *force* the new changes *on/upon* us.

Vegetarians *live on* a diet that does not contain meat.

There are a number of important processes in the *conversion* of coal *into* gas.

Studying at a college or university is very *different from* attending school.

As soon as the police get the information they want, they will *act on* it and surround the house.

The *effect on* the audience of the composer's first symphony was indescribable.

C. We can use an appropriate form of the verb *do* (*do*, *does*, *did*, etc.) as a replacement verb or 'verb substitute' to prevent repetition: *I like ice-cream and Ann* ***does***, *too.* (does = likes ice-cream) *John will catch the early train, and I may* ***do***, *too.* (do = catch the early train)

Even though he has retired, he still gets up early just as he always *did*. (did = got up early)

He certainly enjoys music as much as you *do*. (do = enjoy music)

If you act as he *does*, you won't be very popular. (does = acts)

D. 1. Of the two books, I found the horror novel *the more* entertaining.

2. Janet was *the most* intelligent girl in the class.

E. 1. The concert tickets were *much more expensive* than I had been told.

pursued their prey until it was too exhausted to run any farther. (The verb *prey on* means 'hunt and eat as prey': *Cats prey on birds and mice.*)

The verb *pray* means 'speak, often silently, to God or a god, privately or with others': *The whole family went to the temple to pray.*

B. 1. *came about* = happened, in a way that seemed impossible to prevent

2. *came over me* = took hold of me suddenly and strangely

3. *came up with* = thought of; produced

4. *came across* = met by chance

C. 1. This ticket will *enable* me to fly first class.

2. The boys from the two schools were always having *running fights* with each other.

3. We did a lot of shopping yesterday: *in fact*, we visited every clothes and shoe shop in our small town.

4. The two girls might be sisters, but they are totally different *in every other respect*.

5. I feel as exhausted as a middle-aged businessman on a ten-mile walk, *so to speak*. (*so to speak* = as one might say: we tend to use it after a novel or unusual expression.)

6. I really think that acting is a very precarious profession. *Be that as it may*, I still wouldn't stop my daughter going onto the stage if she wanted to. (*be that as it may* = even if that's true, in spite of that)

D. See text.

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 3 行"...they could have caught and lived on prey without using poison, just as the thousands of non-poisonous snakes still do(……它们可以不用毒液捕捉动物而生存,就像今天成千上万的无毒蛇那样)",得知选项(b)Snakes can feed on other animals without the use of poison(蛇可以不必使用毒液而吞食其他动物)为正确项。根据课文的叙述,我们知道蛇并不是靠毒液帮助消化,因此选项(a)Snakes need poison to digest their food(蛇消化食物需要毒液)为错误项。毒蛇靠毒液可以更舒适地生存,并不意味着无毒蛇就比毒蛇难以生存,因此选项(c)Non-poisonous snakes find survival more difficult than poisonous ones(无毒蛇比毒蛇生存困难)为错误项。因为有无毒蛇的存在,因此并不是所有的蛇都能产生毒液,故选项(d)All snakes are capable of manufacturing poison(所有的蛇都能产生毒液)为错误项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 4～5 行"...it enables it to get its food with very little effort, no more effort than one bite(……它能使蛇不用费多大力气就能捕获到食物,轻咬一口即可)",得知选项(c)almost effortless for snakes(使蛇几乎毫不费力)为正确项。并不是所有的食肉动物都能产生毒液,因此选项(a)easy for all carnivores(对所有的食肉动物来说都十分容易)为错误项。该题谈到的是进行猎杀,而不是同类的相互残杀,因此选项(b)a two-edged weapon when

carnivores fight each other(食肉动物互相厮打起来毒液就成了利弊参半的武器)为错误项。用毒液捕杀并非神秘莫测，因此选项(d)unpredictable, as Nature intended(正如大自然所计划的那么神秘莫测)为错误项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 16～17 行"Be that as it may, the nerve poison does its business with man far more quickly than the blood poison(不过，神经毒液比溶血性毒液在人身上起作用快得多)"，得知作用于血液的毒液不如作用于神经的毒液起作用快，因此选项(a)acts less rapidly than nerve poison(比神经毒液的作用慢)为正确项。根据课文的描述，溶血性毒液更为有害，因此选项(b)doesn't affect the victim as badly as nerve poison(对受害方造成的危害并不像神经毒液那么厉害)为错误项。树眼镜蛇和眼镜蛇所产生的是神经毒液，而不是溶血性毒液，因此选项(c)is made by snakes like mambas and cobras (是由像树眼镜蛇和眼镜蛇的蛇产生的)为错误项。课文中说神经毒液是较为原始的一种，而不是溶血性毒液，因此选项(d)was probably the first of the two kinds of poison to be developed(可能是这两种毒液中先产生的一种)为错误项。

4. (d)

根据课文第 18～19 行"Snakes did not acquire their poison for use against man but for use against prey such as rats and mice...(蛇拥有毒液并不是用来对付人的，而是对付它的猎物，诸如鼠类……)"，得知人类并不是蛇毒的伤害目标，因此选项(d)are not the intended victims of snake poison(并不是蛇毒原定的受害者)为正确项。选项(a)can't compare with prey such as rats and mice(无法与

鼠类猎物相提并论)所表达的意思并不明确,不知在哪一方面与鼠类相比,因此为错误项。神经毒液对人的作用比溶血性毒液要快得多,因此选项(b)respond to all snake poisons in the same way(对各种蛇毒的反应都一样)和选项(c)are likely to survive nerve poison but not blood poison(有可能经受得住神经毒液而经受不了溶血性毒液)均为错误项。

Structure 句型

5.(c)

课文中使用的是虚拟语气 could have,表示"过去可能发生但没有发生",如:It could have been worse.(事情可能会更糟。)"情态助动词 would + have"与 could have 相同,因此选项(c)would 为正确项。选项(a)might 加上 have 用来表示"过去某事可能如此但不知是否真正如此"。如:The teacher might have known the local policeman.(那个老师可能认识那个当地警察。)因此该项为错误项。选项(b)should 加上 have 表示"预计要发生可是没发生",如:Two bags which should have gone to Rome were at this moment loaded aboard a flight to London.(两个应该运到罗马的提包眼下装上了飞往伦敦的航班。)因此该项为错误项。选项(d)must 加上 have 表示"对过去某事所做出的判断",如:'A woman phoned while you were out.' 'It must have been Kate.'("你出去时有个女的打来电话。""肯定是凯特。")因此该项为错误项。

6.(c)

课文中使用的动名词 using 与选项(c)the use of 在结构上和意思上相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)to use、选项(b)use和选项(d)have used 都不能用于介词 without 后面。

7. (c)

本题主要考查冠词的用法。课文中使用的是不定冠词 a,用来表示"某类事物",名词复数也可以表示"某类事物",该题中用的是复数名词 snakes,因此不需任何冠词,故选项(c)为正确项。其他 3 项均不正确。

8. (b)

课文中是对两种毒液进行比较,因此选项(b)of the two 为正确项。在对两者进行比较时,不用 all,因此选项(a)of them all 为错误项。文中只是对两种毒液进行比较,而不是对世界上所有的毒液进行比较,因此选项(c)in the world 为错误项。两者之间的比较不用 among,故选项(d)among them both 为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文使用的是 digestive juice(消化液),即一种体液,因此选项(d)body fluid(体液)为正确项。选项(a)oil in the body(身体中的油脂)、选项(b)snake-poison(蛇毒)和选项(c) digestive process(消化过程)所表达的意思都与 digestive juice 不符,因此均为错误项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的名词是 assistance(帮助),选项(b)a help 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)an asset(财富)、选项(c)a necessity(必需品)和选项(d)a disadvantage(不利因素)都与 assistance 的意思不符,故均为错误项。

11. (c)

该题所要表达的是"砒霜和马钱子碱对我们产生的效果不同",因此选项(c)affect(对……影响)为正确项。选项(a)effect(效果)为名词,而不是动词。选项(b)result(导致)和选项(d)cause(导致)都与原义不符,故均为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的 more primitive 意即“较为原始的”，选项(a)less highly developed(发展程度不太高的)与其同义。选项(b)more potent(更有效的)、选项(c)more recent(距今更近的)和选项(d)less complicated(不那么复杂的)都与 more primitive 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

Lesson 21
William S. Hart and the early 'Western' film
威廉·S·哈特和早期"西部"影片

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The basic formula of the Western film is the individual in conflict with himself and with his frontier environment.
2. The arrival of politicians, bankers and businessmen bewildered and confused the men who were used to struggling for survival against the elements.
3. Western films have appealed to twentieth-century audiences because they offer an escape to a time when life, though hard, was relatively simple.

词汇练习参考答案

I had to make a *supreme* effort to stop myself from laughing.

People often wonder who the dramatist was thinking of when he *devised the protagonist* in his last play.

It looked as if the man had committed the crime, but he hadn't: he had been *framed* by two rivals who wanted him put into prison.

The two parties have been *in conflict* about education since the election.

Children need a happy and secure home *environment* if they are to develop normally.

All the man's *contemporaries* were beginning to retire while he was still working hard to make a living.

The woman's novels are *firmly rooted* in her own upbringing in Ireland.

The new housing estate is now *encroaching* on part of the forest.

When the boy first arrived in England from Asia, he was completely *bewildered* by the different way of life.

The nuclear arms race caused the entire world to feel threatened by *impending immolation*.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. William S. Hart was greatest of all Western stars—appeared only in Westerns.

2. He created basic Western film formula and devised protagonist: individual in conflict with self and environment.

3. Had experience of the old West: brought up in it. Understood conflict between individual and encroaching civilization.

4. Men in old West bewildered by politicians, bankers, etc.

5. Audiences always sympathized with Hart's good-bad man as the outsider, one of the disinherited.

B. Audiences in the second decade of the twentieth century found it pleasant to escape to a time when life was hard but simple. And we still do: in a world which is still

full of aggression, hypocrisy and anarchy, we still want to escape and look for a code to live by.

C. [Westerns.]

The 'Western', or 'cowboy film', has become a classic in the twentieth century. And although few are made today, those that are made are still popular. Why? What is it in a Western that people all over the world enjoy watching? It isn't the scenery, although that may help. Those wide open spaces, the prairies and the rocky hills always put the cowboys into perspective. It isn't the accompanying music, because it is sometimes excellent and sometimes dreadful. Nor is it the violence — and there is often a lot of violence in a Western. Quite a number of people, cowboys and Indians, 'goodies' and 'baddies', are killed along the way. It must be that the Western is characterized by a simple plot and characters that are universal in their appeal. The good man (our hero, perhaps an unwilling sheriff) finds himself in conflict with the 'bad guy', the professional 'gunslinger' or even a gang of them, the 'baddies'—and although he faces lots of challenging situations (sometimes even becoming a 'bad guy' for a while), we know he will be victorious in the end and either get the woman or ride off into the sunset with his faithful horse. (199 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. I promise to tell the truth, the whole truth, and *nothing but* the truth.

particular idea or feeling e. g. about one's character, feelings or intentions': *He appears/seems to be sincere, but I don't completely trust him*. (In this sense, neither verb can be used in the continuous form.)

2. Point out the clear difference in pronunciation between these two words.

   The verb *devise* /dɪ'vaɪz/ means 'plan or invent, esp. cleverly': *They devised a plan for getting the jewels out of the country*.

   A *device* /dɪ'vaɪs/ is 'a piece of equipment intended for a particular purpose': *The missile has a heart-seeking device which enables it to find its target*.

3. While the word *suspect* is a noun, it is also an adjective. It means 'of uncertain truth, quality, legality, etc.': *His fitness is suspect, so we can't risk including him in the team*.

   Suspicious means 'suspecting guilt or wrongdoing, not trusting': *His strange behaviour made the police very suspicious*.

4. The uncountable noun *memory* refers to 'the ability to remember events and experiences': *She played the tune from memory*.

   As a countable noun, it means 'an event or experience that one remembers from the past': *I have a very clear memory of going to the beach for the first time*.

   Remembrance can mean 'something kept or given to remind one, or the act of remembering': *A church service was held in remembrance of those killed in the war*.

5. *History* is 'the study of events in the past, such as those of nation, arranged in order from earlier to later times': *She has a degree in Chinese history.*

   A *story* is 'an account of events, real or imagined': *He wrote a short story about a teenage pop star.*

6. The verbs *rob* and *steal* can easily be confused.

   Rob is used in the construction 'rob someone of something/rob a place': *The thief robbed the lady of her watch. The gang robbed the bank.*

   Steal means 'take what belongs to someone else without any right to it': *The thief stole the lady's watch. They stole £1m from the bank.*

B. 1. Unlike most of his contemporaries, *the painter never experimented with abstract art.*

2. Unlike some people, *I never pass on any gossip I might hear.*

3. Unlike yourself, *I have never been interested in football.*

C. This was the party's most disastrous and embarrassing defeat ever: *in short* it was a fiasco.

On this particular issue the Prime Minister is *in* direct *conflict with* many of his colleagues in the Government.

Although she is normally right, she has been wrong on *at least* one occasion this week.

He tried several times to pass his driving test, and *in the end* he succeeded.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 2～5 行"It was Hart who created the basic formula of the Western film... in short, the individual in conflict with himself and his frontier environment(正是哈特创造了西部电影的基调……总之,主人公是一个既自相矛盾又与他的拓荒环境相矛盾的人物)",得知哈特所定义的西部电影的基调是"矛盾",因此选项(b)conflict(矛盾)为正确项。选项(a)contrast(对比)、选项(c)evil(罪恶)和选项(d)outlaws(歹徒)都与文章所述意义不符,故均为错误项。

2. (d)

根据课文第 6～7 行"He had lived in it as a child when it was already disappearing, and his hero was firmly rooted in his memories and experiences(作为一个孩子,他曾在西部生活过,当时西部拓荒生活正在消失。他塑造的英雄人物深深地扎根于他本人的记忆和经历之中)",得知他对西部的了解直接来自他的个人经历,因此选项(d)based on direct personal experience(直接基于他的个人经历)为正确项。他对西部的理解并未被浪漫主义化,所以选项(a)absurdly romanticized(被荒谬地浪漫主义化了)为错误项。文中明确地说到,他与他同时代的好莱坞影人不同,因此选项(b)influenced by his contemporaries in Hollywood(受到好莱坞同时代人的影响)为错误项。选项(c)part of history and mythology(部分历史和部分神话)并不是他对西部的理解,因此为错误项。

3. (b)

根据课文第 10 行“... the conflict between the individual and encroaching civilization(……也就是个人与渐渐闯入的文明这两者之间的冲突)”,得知早期西部电影的基本主题就是生活在自然之中的人同现代文明的斗争,因此选项(b) was about the clash between civilization and Nature(关于文明和自然的碰撞)为正确项。选项(a)concerned survival *against* Indians(与印第安人斗争以求生存有关)并不是西部电影的基本主题。选项(c)was not appreciated by early audiences(未得到早期观众的欣赏)与课文所述意义不符,因此为错误项。选项(d)was about inheritance(是关于继承权的)并不是西部电影的基本主题。

4. (b)

根据课文第 16～17 行“Audiences in the second decade of the twentieth century found it pleasant to escape to a time when life, though hard, was relatively simple(生活在 20 世纪 20 年代的观众认为,逃到一个即使艰苦但比较简朴的时代中去是件愉快的事,我们今天仍有这种感觉)”,可以得出这样的结论,即过去和现在的人们都喜欢过一种简朴的生活,所以选项(b) simple living and simple rules(简朴的生活与简单的规则)为正确项。选项(a)stories about civilization(有关文明的故事)、选项(c)impending catastrophe(即将临头的灾难)和选项(d) war and bad behaviour(战争与恶行)都不是观众喜欢的。

Structure 句型

5. (a)

课文中使用的 nothing but 常用于名词或不带 to 的动词不定式前,表示“仅仅”的意思,如:In the fridge there was

nothing but a piece of cheese.(冰箱里除了一块奶酪,什么都没有。)He did nothing but complain.(他什么都不做,只是在抱怨。)选项(a)except 可用来替代 but 表达相同的意思,因此该项为正确项。其他 3 项都不能用于此处表达与 nothing but 相同的含义,故均为错误项。

6.(a)

本题考查关系代词。本句中定语从句的先行词是表示人的名词 protagonist,而且关系代词在从句中的句子成分是宾语,因此选项(a)whom 为正确项。其他 3 项中的关系代词都不能代替"人",故均为错误项。

7.(d)

本题也考查关系代词的用法。该句中定语从句的先行词是表示地方的名词。这里的关系副词应该是 where 或介词 + 关系代词 which, 因此选项(d)in which 为正确项。其他 3 项均不正确。

8.(d)

课文中使用的连接词 although 引导让步状语从句。连词 while 也可以表示"虽然",用于连接让步状语从句。因此选项(d)while 为正确项。其他 3 项中的连词都不能用来引导让步状语从句。

Vocabulary 词汇

9.(a)

课文中使用的名词 protagonist 意即"主角",选项(a)leading part(主要角色)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)fighter(战士)、选项(c)cowboy(牛仔)和选项(d)first person(头一个人)都不是此意思,故均为错误项。

10.(b)

课文中使用的 vanished 意即"消失了的",选项(b)disappeared(消失的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项

(a)expanded(扩展的)、选项(c)become established (已建立的)和选项(d)changed(变化了的)都与 vanished 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

11. (c)

课文中使用的 absurdly romanticized(被荒谬地浪漫主义化了)与 romanticize in a ridiculous fashion 同义,因此选项(c)a ridiculous 为正确项。选项(a)an exaggerated(夸张的)、选项(b)a realistic(现实的)和选项(d)an amusing(有趣的)都不能表达"荒谬的",故均为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的 bewildered 意即"弄得晕头转向",选项(a)confused(弄糊涂了)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)surrounded(包围)、选项(c)pursued(追逐)和选项(d)welcomed(欢迎)都与 bewildered 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

Lesson 22
Knowledge and progress
知识和进步

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The author seems to define the word 'progress' as the ever-increasing accumulation of knowledge.
2. With the coming of science the tempo of the spread of knowledge was increased, and knowledge began to be accumulated systematically.
3. The spread of knowledge has given rise to the question of what we are going to do with it all.

词汇练习参考答案

Few people thought that the problems of crime and poverty would *loom so large* as they do now in so many countries.

Fear was *manifest* on the man's face.

The *accumulation* of antiques of all kinds has taken all our spare money over the past few years.

Her chances of getting the job were *enhanced* by excellent secretarial skills.

The boss treated his workers *indifferently* because he was only interested in how fast they could work.

We watched the curious *spectacle* of government troops

attacking government buildings.

One of the most *grimly whimsical* painting that I have ever seen is a medieval picture of Death and the Peasant.

A window has a *twofold* purpose: it allows light into a room and it lets people see out.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. Knowledge increased with communication—speech.

2. When writing was invented, another great step: knowledge now stored.

3. Written knowledge made education possible: libraries increased.

4. Growth, communication and storage of knowledge — enhanced by printing.

5. The advent of science imposed system on accumulation of knowledge.

6. Trickle became stream, stream has become torrent.

7. New knowledge now applied immediately to practical life.

B. The problem facing humanity now is what to do with all the knowledge we have accumulated. Knowledge is a two-edged weapon which can be used equally for good or evil. It is now used for both. It is ironical, for instance, that science can be used on the one hand to help a gunner shoot people and, at the same time, help a surgeon to heal wounded men. We should ask ourselves now where this twofold use of knowledge will end.

C. [Knowledge is a two-edged weapon.]

Knowledge, as the author rightly points out, is a

two-edged weapon that can be used for good or evil. He quotes the example of science being used in two completely different ways—firstly to give a gunner the weapon with which to shoot someone and then to provide a surgeon with the necessary equipment, skills and medication to restore to health the person that the gunner has shot. Politicians, religious leaders and scientists, it seems, provide us with good examples of what people can do with the same information and the same knowledge. With the same facts, often twisted a certain way, one politician will try to persuade you that a new highway past your village is a good thing, while another politician, his opponent, will use the same information or knowledge to persuade you that the highway is a bad idea. Or imagine that an archaeologist finds a human footprint in a layer of rock millions of years old. What does he do with that information, that knowledge? He will use it to support an argument that man is millions of years older than we ever thought, while another archaeologist will either express serious doubt about the discovery, or will at least interpret the same knowledge to support a different argument. (212 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. In the construction *make* + object + adjective (*made education possible*), the verb *make* means 'cause to be or become': *Eating the unripe apples made him ill. Her attitude has always made her very unpopular with the staff.*

2. The adjective *extraordinary* means 'unusual, surprising, special, more than what is ordinary': *He has an extraordinary tenor voice for such a young man.*
The adjective *outstanding* is more than 'extraordinary', it means 'much better than most others, very good': *Academically she is outstanding: at the age of 13 she has just gained a place at Oxford University.*
3. A *spectacle* is 'a grand public show or scene or an unusual thing or situation to be seen and noticed': *The military parade was a magnificent spectacle. I have witnessed some strange spectacles in my life.*
A *view* is 'something seen from a particular place, especially a stretch of pleasant country': *I'd like a room with a view, please.*

B. 1. It is becoming *more and more* obvious that Jack will not become an artist.
2. Some of the prisoners managed to speak to each other *by means of* a series of taps on pipes.
3. The propeller-driven aircraft made commercial flight possible, and the jet engine *in its turn* led to today's generation of aircraft.
4. I had *a kind of* a feeling that she might call me today.
5. These particular birds are still *comparatively* rare in the south of England.
6. Those people live their lives *according to* laws laid down hundreds of years ago.
7. Don't worry. I'll be *at hand* to help you if you get into trouble.

C. The small amount of knowledge grew to a large amount, and now that large amount has increased to a massive amount—enough perhaps to drown us?

D. The prefix *ever-* before an *-ing* adjective means 'constantly, all the time', as in *ever-decreasing circles*.

Some scientists say that the universe is an *ever-expanding* universe.

We live in an *ever-changing* world.

The company faced *ever-diminishing* profits for four or five years before they finally closed up.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 3～4 行"... it has made extraordinary progress in the accumulation of knowledge(……但在知识积累方面却取得了巨大的进步)",得知人类积累的知识越来越多,因此选项(c)The body of knowledge available to humans becomes greater and greater(人类可获得的知识越来越多)为正确项。课文中第 2～3 行说"Although mankind has undergone no general improvement in intelligence or morality...(虽然人类在智力和道德上没有得到普遍提高……)",显然选项(a)Humans today have greatly improved in moral behaviour(如今人类的道德行为已经极大地进步了)为错误项。课文中讲人类的智力并没有普遍地提高,因此选项(b)Advances in human intelligence have made progress possible(人类的智力提高

使得进步成为可能)为错误项。人类的道德虽然并没有普遍提高,但也没有下降,因此选项(d) Knowledge increases, morality declines(知识增加,道德下降)为错误项。

2. (d)

根据课文第 5~6 行"With the invention of writing, a great advance was made, for knowledge could then be not only communicated but also stored(随着书写的发明,又迈进了一大步,因为这样一来,知识不仅能交流,而且还能储存了)",得知人类取得的最大进步之一就是记录知识,因此选项(d) to keep records of things they have learned(记录他们学到的东西)为正确项。选项(a) to learn about things(学习东西)并不是人类取得的最大进步之一,因此为错误项。选项(b) to tell other people what they have learned(告诉别人他们学到的东西)只是积累知识的最原始的手段,因此为错误项。选项(c) to think about what they have learned(考虑他们所学到的东西)也不是人类的最大进步之一,因此也为错误项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 8~10 行"All this was comparatively slow until, with the coming of science, the *tempo* was suddenly raised(所有这些发展都比较缓慢,而随着科学的到来,增长的速度才突然加快)",得知科学的发展使得知识的积累越来越快,因此选项(a) The rate of growth of knowledge becomes faster and faster(知识增长的速度变得越来越快)为正确项。文中说知识的增长而不是图书馆的增多,因此选项(b) Libraries increase with amazing speed(图书馆以惊人的速度增多)为错误项。文中说印刷术的发明又大大地提高了知识增长的速度,所以选项

(c) The invention of printing had a minor effect on the growth of knowledge(印刷术的发明对知识的增长具有很小的作用)与事实不符,因此为错误项。文中只是说滚雪球规律是知识增长所遵循的规律,而不是一切事物所遵循的规律,因此选项(d) The compound interest law is the basis of everything(滚雪球规律是一切事物的根本)为错误项。

4. (c)

根据课文第 10 ~ 11 行"Moreover, as soon as new knowledge is acquired, it is now turned to practical account(而且,新知识一旦获得,便得到实际应用)",得知人类学到新知识就要让这些新知识为其所用,因此选项(c) make it work for them(使其为他们所用)为正确项。选项(a) find out more about 'modern civilization'(对"现代文明"就有更多的了解)与前文所述意义不符,因此为错误项。掌握知识的人是将知识为己所用,而不是为了人类的利益,因此选项(b) use it for the benefit of mankind(用它为人类造福)为错误项。选项(d) create a systematic plan(制定一个系统计划)也与前文所述意义不符,故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (b)

课文中句子的主语是 the thoughts of one individual,因此使用的是动词 communicate 的被动语态,而该题从句中的主语是动作的实施者 humans,所以应该用主动语态,因此选项(b) communicate 为正确项。其他 3 个选项用于该句中结构都不正确。

6. (a)

课文中使用的是复合连词 not only... but also... 表示

"不仅……而且……"。选项(a)as well 为正确项，它常用于句末，表示"也"的意思，如：They will have a rough year next year as well.（明年他们的日子也不好过。）一般情况下 as well 不用于否定句中。选项(b)together所表达的意思与原文意义不符。选项(c)both 表示"两者都"，与原文意义不符。选项(d)either 用于否定句中，而不用于肯定句中，如：I'm not hungry and she is not hungry either.（我不饿，她也不饿。）

7. (d)

课文中使用的是"动词 begin + 动词不定式"结构，与"动词 begin + 动词的-ing 形式"表达的意思相同，因此选项(d)being为正确项。该句中空格后面跟随的是动词的过去分词形式，因此其前不能用 to，故选项(a)to 为错误项。选项(b)was 为 is 的过去式，不能直接跟在另一个动词后面。选项(c)to being 中的 to 是多余的。

8. (b)

课文中用的是被动语态，该句中主语为实施动作的人，故应为主动语态，因此选项(b)to do 为正确项。选项(a)to be done 的语态不正确。选项(c)do 中缺少 to。该句使用的是 be going to do sth. 结构，going 后面只能跟动词不定式，因此选项(d)doing 为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

课文中使用的是表示"发生"的短语动词 take place，动词 occur 意即"发生"，如：The attack occurred six days ago.（袭击发生在 6 天之前。）因此选项(c)occurring为正确项。进步的发生不能用动词 do 来表示，因此选项(a)doing 为错误项。可以说某人 make progress（取得进步），而该句表达的是进步发生在我们周围，因此选项(b)making 为

错误项。选项(d)taking part 意思是“参加”，与 take place 的语义完全不同。

10. (d)

课文中使用的动词 enhance(增进)，选项(d)improved 所表达的意思与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)reduced(减少)、选项(b)applied(应用于)和选项(c)renewed(使恢复)都与其表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的动词 acquire 意即“获得”，与选项(a)obtained(获得)的意思相同。选项(b)acknowledged(承认)、选项(c)accepted(接受)和选项(d)recorded(记录)都与其表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

12. (b)

课文中使用的名词 spectacle 意即“情景”，选项(b)sight 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)landscape(风景)、选项(c)scene(风景)和选项(d)view(眼界，观点)都与其表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

Lesson 23
Bird flight
鸟的飞行方法

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The albatross is described as 'the king of the gliders' because it can fly for hours with its wings outstretched over currents of air and without hardly ever moving its wings.
2. The author singles out the swallow for special praise because the bird shares the virtues of both kinds of flight, the 'glider' and the 'power flier'.

词汇练习参考答案

The number of stars (or suns) in the universe is *infinite*.

'This should give you *sufficient sustenance* to last the rest of the race,' the woman said rather pompously, as she handed us each a small bar of chocolate.

In order to reduce the use of fossil fuels, we have now begun to *harness* energy from the wind and tides.

The Prime Minister finally had to *yield* to criticism about his private life and resign.

A tortoise is *endowed* with a thick shell which protects it against many dangers.

The massive waves beat the cliff with such *irresistible power*

that some enormous rocks broke off and crashed into the sea.

The crowd was very dense, but I managed to *bore* my way through to the front.

We all get on very well because we have *like* attitudes to many things.

When the police finally found the woman, she was in a state of *utter* terror.

The climb was bound to fail because they set off in *adverse* conditions.

She took all the little things that happened that day as *omens* for their future married life.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. Two major recognizable kinds of flight.

2. Albatross—example of a 'glider': follow ship for hours without moving wings.

3. 'Gliders' harness air to their purpose.

4. Ducks, on the other hand, are like engines.

5. Power in ducks and pigeons supplied by steel-like muscles; they power short wings.

6. Bore their way through winds and gales for long distances.

B. The swallow is an example of a bird that possesses good qualities of both schools of flight. On the one hand, it does not tire, and on the other it has great power. It can fly as much as six thousand miles to and from its nesting home, even feeding its young in flight and making good progress in adverse conditions. Such birds do us good, maintains the author, even though few people nowadays, not even

superstitious villagers, believe in them as omens.

C. [Birds.]

Birds cover the globe in vast quantities and in a vast variety. You will find birds wherever you go in the world. They are found in all climates, in all kinds of terrain, on land, over the sea, on mountains, over lakes. Indeed there are very few places in the world where you will not see or hear a bird. All have wings and the vast majority can fly, although some have lost the power of flight. All birds lay eggs, although not all build 'pretty' nests to lay them in. Birds are found in all kinds of colours and come in all sizes from the smallest humming-bird to immensely large eagles, vultures and albatrosses; and of course there are even larger flightless birds such as ostriches and emus. Birds seem to have adapted to all kinds of environments and all kinds of needs: penguins in the Antarctic have developed flippers (from wings) for 'flying' underwater, albatrosses have developed huge wings which allow them to live for days on the wing over water, humming-birds feed on nectar from flowers (like bees) and their wings beat so fast you can't see them with the naked eye, pelicans have huge beaks with 'bags' under them to hold fish,... The list is endless. Birds are beautiful creatures and a constant source of amazement. (221 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. If you have ever driven at a hundred miles an hour, *you may understand why I would like to drive a racing*

feathers to take home.

3. The words *course* and *coarse* are pronounced in the same way (/kɔːs/ or /kɔːrs/), but are quite different in meaning.

   A *course* is 'the path along which something moves, or the direction of movement taken by someone or sth.': *The plane changed course to avoid the storm.*

   The adjective *coarse* means 'not fine or smooth; lumpy or rough': *The sand on the beach on the north side of the island was very coarse, whereas on the south beach it was very fine.*

B. 1. What *sort* of bicycle did you buy?

2. How many *sorts* of snakes did you see at the zoo?

C. 1. *roughly* = about, not exactly

2. *rough* = uneven, not smooth

3. *Roughly* = About, Approximately

4. *rough* = stormy and violent, not calm

D. If you *keep company with* drug addicts, you might become one yourself.

As well as Jane's father, the rest of her family were there to greet us, too.

Men no longer *take off their hats to* ladies as they used to many years ago.

E. 1. It takes me *a good fifteen minutes* to walk home from work.

2. I didn't measure it, but we must have walked *a good twenty miles* yesterday.

3. There must have been *a good five hundred people* at our village concert.

4. I have *a good many* friends on the Internet now.

5. We've been there *a good few* times.

F. They planted lots of different flowers, *such as* roses, carnations and poppies.

Many professional thieves only steal light things *such as* jewellery and money.

G. Do: do your duty, do wrong, do harm, do the shopping, do a lesson, do some work, do a job, do your best, do business, do an experiment, do (someone) a favour, do some homework

Make: make an excuse, make a fortune, make an attempt, make a bed, make a proposal, make sense, make a speech, make a problem, make a difference, make a copy, make an announcement, make an agreement, make money, make a mistake, make a living, make fun of, make friends with, make trouble, make sure, make a will, make a noise

H. We often use the phrases *good morning*, *good afternoon*, etc. when reporting speech and with the verbs *wish* and *say*.

Note that we can *wish someone luck*, *well*, *good morning*, *good afternoon*, *good evening*, *good night*; and we can *say good morning*, *good afternoon*, *good evening*, *good night*, *hello*, *goodbye to someone*.

Wish me luck in the exam! I think I'm going to need it!

As I left on my trip to America, all my friends *wished me well*.

She *wished me good night* as I left her at her door.

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文的描述，鸟的飞行方式可分为两类，一类是以信天翁为代表的滑翔飞行和以野鸭子为代表的靠肌肉飞行，因此选项(c)gliding and muscle-power(滑翔和肌肉的力量)为正确项。选项(a)occasional movement and progress(偶然的运动和前进)并不是鸟的飞行方式。选项(b)wing span and gliding(翼展和滑翔)中的翼展只是鸟赖以滑翔的必备条件，而不是鸟飞行的方式。选项(d)wind current and muscle-power(气流和肌肉的力量)中的气流并不是鸟飞行的方式。

2. (a)

根据课文第5～6行"The albatross is the king of the gliders, the class of fliers which harness the air to their purpose...(信天翁是滑翔飞行之王，它能自如地驾驭空气……)"，得知信天翁能自如地驾驭空气而不需要靠自己的力量去飞行，因此能远距离地飞行，故选项(a)actively uses air movement to stay in the sky(主动地利用空气的流动呆在天空)为正确项。信天翁并不是因为它巨大而进行长距离的飞行，因此选项(b)it is a great bird(它是巨大的鸟)为错误项。选项(c)recognizes ships at sea(辨别海上的船只)也并不是信天翁能够长距离飞行的原因。课文第6行谈到"but must yield to its opposition(但是必须顺气流飞行)"，所以信天翁并不是可以任意滑翔而不考虑气流的方向，因此选项(d)it can glide in any direction, regardless of air currents(它能够不

顾气流而朝任何方向飞行)为错误项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 8～10 行"Duck, and like them the pigeons, are endowed with steel-like muscles, that are a good part of the weight of the bird, and these will ply the short wings with such irresistible power that they can bore for long distances through an opposing gale before exhaustion follows(野鸭及与它们相似的鸽子有天赋的钢铁般的肌肉,占了体重的很大一部分。这些肌肉以巨大的力量扇动短小的翅膀,使这类鸟能顶着大风飞行很远的路程才会疲劳)",得知虽然野鸭具有钢铁般的翅膀,但是它总有疲劳的时候,因此选项(d)but can run out of energy(但是会精疲力竭)为正确项。鸭子是靠肌肉飞行而不是滑翔,因此它不可能长时间呆在空中,因此选项(a)and stay in the air indefinitely(并在空中无限期地呆下去)为错误项。根据文中的描述,知道野鸭可以靠强健的肌肉长距离飞行,因此选项(b)but are too heavy to fly for long(但是体重太重而不能长久地飞行)为错误项。选项(c)and uses engine power(并且使用发动机的力量)更是不可能的,因此为错误项。

4. (c)

根据课文第 12～13 行"The swallow shares the virtues of both schools in highest measure(燕子充分兼有这两类鸟的长处)",得知燕子既可以滑翔也可以靠自己肌肉的力量飞行,因此选项(c)combines both forms of flight(集合了这两种飞行方式)为正确项。现在人们已经不再向燕子脱帽行礼了,因此选项(a)is often greeted by superstitious villagers(常常受到迷信的村民们的致意)为错误项。选项(b)is good for people(对人们有好处)中的

be good for 一般表示"对……有好处",如:Milk is good for you.(牛奶对你有好处。)课文中是说燕子对人有益处,该项所表达的意思与其意义不符,因此为错误项。过去人们用燕子飞行的姿态占卜吉凶,而现在人们已经不再迷信了,所以选项(d)is an omen of good luck(是好运的预兆)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

课文中使用的情态助动词 must 表示"必须", have to 也可以用来表示相同的意思,如:You have to find some compromise.(你得找到某种妥协办法。)因此选项(c)has 为正确项。选项(a)must 为情态助动词,后面直接跟动词原形,而不用 to,因此为错误项。选项(b)could 表示"可能",而不是"必须"。选项(d)should 表示"应该",而不是"必须"。

6. (d)

课文中使用的是关系代词 which,该题中由于定语从句的先行词是表示物的 engines,所以选项(a) where、选项(b)who和选项(c)whom 都不能用来引导该句的定语从句。该句将介词 with 置于句子末尾,并省略了关系代词 which,因此选项(d) - 为正确项。

7. (c)

课文中使用的动词 have 表示"具有",与选项(c)possess(具有)表达的意思相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)contain(包含)、选项(b)provide(提供)和选项(d)display(展示)所表达的意思与 have 不同,故均为错误项。

8. (a)

该题中 tire 为动词,主语为第 3 人称单数,故选项(a)does not tire 为正确项。行为动词的否定形式应该是助动

词加not,而不能直接加 not,因此选项(b)not tire 和选项(c)not tires 为错误项。该题中的主语是第 3 人称单数,应该用助动词 does,因此选项(d)do not tire 为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中用形容词 infinite 表示鸟类飞行方式的千差万别,该题中的 There is no end to the variety of... 表示某种事物的种类无穷尽,与 infinite 所表达的意思相同,故选项(b)end 为正确项。选项(a)opportunity(机会)、选项(c)point(点)和选项(d)goal(目标)都与其所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的形容词 immense 意即"巨大的",选项(c)huge(巨大的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)broad(宽广的)、选项(b)long(长的)和选项(d)wide(宽阔的)都不能表达此含义,故均为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的是动词 endow 的被动语态结构 be endowed with,意即"被给予",所以选项(a)provided(提供,给予)为正确项。选项(b)gifted(具有……才能)和选项(c)talented(具有……才能)与其意思不符,因此为错误项。选项(d)inherited(遗传,天生)在"某人或某物天生具有某种性格或特性"结构中用主动语态而不用被动语态,如:She inherits her blue eyes from her father.(她那双蓝眼睛是从她父亲那儿遗传来的。)

12. (c)

课文中使用的名词 omens 意即"征兆"、"预兆",选项(c)signs(征兆,迹象)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)guides(指南,指导)、选项(b)notices(通知)和选项(d)signals(信号)都不含此意思,故均为错误项。

Lesson 24
Beauty
美

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. According to the author, great art and certain moods of nature have one thing in common: they both suggest a world beyond this one.
2. The author feels that it is unwise to attempt to interpret beauty because it is meaningless in terms of ordinary human meanings.

词汇练习参考答案

The noise *roused* me from a deep sleep.

From an *aesthetic* point of view, it's a very good design.

In the *realm* of science, he has an excellent reputation.

He gave a very *moving* speech at his brother's funeral.

Whenever I try to describe a country landscape, I find it almost impossible to *convey* the beauty in words.

Many adults, in times of stress and worry, experience an almost *indefinable longing* for their childhood.

Some film actresses seem to possess a certain *radiance* which shines out whenever they are in front of the camera.

We were woken every morning by the donkeys *braying* in the

nearby field.

Your ideas for solving all the world's problems are just fanciful *whimsies*.

To *glimpse the unutterable* is to see, for a brief moment, something or someone that cannot be described.

As humans, we are constantly trying to *invest with significance* the minor events in our lives.

段落练习参考答案

A. 1. Great art and nature—power to suggest world beyond.

2. Effect of blue sky or sunset on viewer: a vision of something better.

3. If beauty does mean something, we must not attempt interpretation.

4. We should not try to describe the indescribable: we haven't the language.

5. In terms of human meanings, beauty is meaningless.

B. The effect that the sunset has on a young man, since he cannot express his feelings, is like a vision of another world. Aesthetic experiences like watching a beautiful sunset somehow suggest the existence of a world in some way higher than our own. We seem to glimpse, through the bright light, a hint of beauty and serenity that we have never known. It is impossible to describe because language is ill-equipped and only designed to describe things of this world.

C. [What is beautiful to one individual is ugly to another.]

There is a saying in English: 'Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.' It is perfectly true. You only need to look at

the men and women who attract each other, or the vast, strange differences between people who come together as friends. Short people find tall people attractive, and beautiful people find ugly people attractive. Remember the story of 'Beauty and the Beast'. Beauty comes from within. If this were not true, we would all like and hate the same paintings and other works of art. As it is, we have different tastes, and each one of us finds different things 'beautiful'. Beyond that, beauty is not only 'in the eye of the beholder': a piece of music can be described as 'beautiful' if it has a spine-tingling effect on the listener. So 'beauty is also in the ear of the listener'. And can it therefore be in the 'hand of the toucher'? Blind people can surely 'feel beauty' in the same way that sighted people can 'see beauty' and in the same way that we who can hear, can in fact 'hear beauty'. It is most certainly true: beauty is in the eye, the ear or the hand of the beholder, the listener, the toucher. (208 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. *Must* could be replaced by *has to* in items 2 and 3 (where *must* expresses an obligation).

Must in items 1 and 4 expresses an assumption or deduction.

B. 1. *It* must have been after one o'clock when I arrived home.

2. *There* must have been a large number of accidents over the Christmas holidays.

3. You might be asked to make a speech, but I think *it* is

Lie means 'be or remain in a flat position on a surface': *They just lie on the beach all day.*

Lay means 'place, put, esp. carefully, in a flat position': *We must lay the injured woman carefully on the stretcher before we put her into the ambulance.*

Remember too that the regular verb *lie* means 'tell lies': *Don't believe the girl: she lies to everybody.*

4. The adjective *indefinable* refers to something that cannot be defined: *As soon as I arrived, I felt an indefinable air of tension in the house.*

   Undefined refers to something that can be defined but has not been: *When he first started in the new job, he felt a little awkward because his position in the company was undefined.*

5. *Vulgar* means 'showing a lack of fine feeling or good judgment in the choice of what is suitable or beautiful': *Their house was full of expensive but vulgar ornaments.*

   Common can mean 'found or happening often or in many places, usual': *Rabbits and foxes are common in Britain.* It can also mean 'of no special quality or rank': *Common salt is very cheap.*

B. 1. The meeting usually *concludes* with questions from any visitors.

2. That was the most embarrassing *experience* I have ever had.

3. She doesn't usually like this kind of music, she still came *though*.

4*a*. The couple *invested* their life's savings in their son's

business.

4*b*. As we parted, he *grasped* my hand and shook it warmly.

5. British schools, colleges and universities have three *terms* in the academic year.

C. 1. I'm sure the young man doesn't *fully realize* how serious his crime is.

2. He may be young, but he is *fully capable* of lifting that box of books.

3. Before you make your first parachute jump, an instructor will *explain fully* exactly what you must do.

D. As I was walking past the woods, I *caught a glimpse* of a fox among the trees.

I don't know why, but when I left the building I felt *in some way* easier in my mind.

Many famous people didn't *seek to* become famous, it just happened.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 2～4 行"It is difficult for any of us in moments of intense aesthetic experience to resist the suggestion that we are catching a glimpse of a light that shines down to us from a different realm of existence...(无论是谁,在强烈感受到美的时刻,心中都不禁油然而

生一种遐想：我们似乎瞥见从另一个世界射向我们的一线光芒……)"，得知人们在强烈地感受到美的时候都会不由自主地产生遐想，认为那代表着某种不可言喻的意义，因此正确项应该是选项(a)are tempted to believe it has some kind of meaning(不由自主地确信它有着某种含义)。选项(b)want to express the emotion it arouses in us (想要表达它在我们心中引发的情感)与课文所述意义不符。人们强烈感受到美时，只是想像它可能是来自另一个世界，而不是明确地知道它就是来自那儿，因此选项(c)know that it comes from a different realm of existence (知道它来自一个不同的世界)为错误项。选项(d)are open to suggestions(乐于接受建议)与课文所述毫无关联，只是课文中出现了 resist the suggestion 而用 suggestion 进行干扰。

2. (a)

根据课文第 6～7 行"Greater too than we can describe; for language, which was invented to convey the meanings of this world, cannot readily be fitted to the uses of another (这种美感和静谧是我们无法描述的，因为我们发明的语言是用来描述我们这个世界的含义，不可能随便就适合用于描述另一个世界)"，得知我们所发明的语言不足以用来描述另一个世界，因此选项(a)is not powerful enough to describe other-worldly experiences(不足以强大到描述其他世界的感受)为正确项。选项(b)always conveys meaning(总在传达意义)并不是作者所表达的意思。选项(c)can convey beauty and serenity(能够传递美感与静谧)与作者所述意义相反。作者并不是在探讨语言的用途，只是说人类的语言不足以描述那令人震颤的美感和静谧，因此选项(d)has only got one use(只有一种用途)为

错误项。

3. (c)

根据课文第8～9行"That all great art has this power of suggesting a world beyond is undeniable. In some moods, Nature shares it(不可否认，一切伟大的艺术都具有使人遐想到进入天外世界的魅力。在某种状态下，大自然也有这种魅力)"，得知不仅伟大的艺术而且大自然也具有这种魅力，因此选项(c)Not only Nature(不仅是大自然)为正确项。并不是所有的艺术形式，而只有伟大的艺术形式和大自然才具有这种魅力，因此选项(a)All forms of art and Nature(所有的艺术形式和大自然)为错误项。选项(b)Only Nature(只有大自然)显然与课文所述意义不符。选项(d)Only great art(只有伟大的艺术)也不全面，因此为错误项。

4. (c)

本题考查对作者在这篇文章里所暗含意思的理解。通过文章后半部分的描述，特别是第15～16行"If we glimpse the unutterable, it is unwise to try to utter it, nor should we seek to invest with significance that which we cannót grasp(如果我们瞥见了只可意会不可言传的事物，企图把它说出来，那是不明智的；对于我们不理解的事物，我们也不应该去赋予它某种意义)"，了解到作者告诫人们不要试图去赋予不理解的事物某种意义，这同时表明正是人们热衷于此，作者才加以告诫，因此选项(c)have an explanation of the meaning of life(对生命的意义要有个解释)为正确项。选项(a)explain the meaning of life(解释生命的意义)、选项(b)explain the meaning of beauty(解释美的意义)和选项(d)express the inexpressible(表达不可表达的事物)都与作者所暗含的意思不符，故均为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (b)

课文中使用的是形容词 unable(不能够),情态助动词 can 的否定形式 can't 也能用来表达相同的意思,因此选项(b)can't为正确项。选项(a)is enabled to 表示"使能够",与 unable 所表达的意思不符。be incapable of doing sth. 与 be unable to do sth. 所表达的意思相同,但是注意 incapable 后面跟随的是 of doing sth.,而不是动词不定式,因此选项(c)is incapable to 为错误项。选项(d)hasn't potential to 表示"没有潜力去"。

6. (c)

课文中使用的是定语从句 that shines..., 该题中使用的是分词短语 shining down,该分词短语在句中作定语修饰 a light。这种用法相当于省略了部分成分的定语从句,如:Anyone touching that wire will get a shock. 相当于:Anyone who touches that wire will get a shock.(任何人触摸那条电线都会触电。)故选项(c)shining 为正确项。选项(a)which shining 中的 which 是多余的。选项(b)that it shines 中的 it 是多余的。选项(d)to shine 为动词不定式,动词 catch + 宾语的后面不能用动词不定式而应用动词的-ing 形式表示现场抓获某人做某事。

7. (a)

课文中使用的副词 yet 表示强调,意即"然而"。一般 yet 多用于否定句和疑问句,但是有时在较正式的文体中也用于肯定句,正如本课中那样,所表达的意思与 still 相同。因此选项(a)still 为正确项。选项(b)even(甚至)、选项(c)up to this time(直至目前)和选项(d)always(总是)都不能表达此含义。

8. (d)

课文中第 11～12 行"But, if this world is not merely a bad joke, life a vulgar flare amid the cool radiance of the stars, and existence an empty laugh braying across the mysteries...(如果这个世界不只是一个拙劣的恶作剧,如果人生不只是群星寒光中平凡的一闪,如果存在不只是对神秘事物的一阵空虚的笑声……)"使用了排比结构,后面的并列结构中省略了 if 和 is not。该题主要考查是否清楚该句的结构,综上所述,选项(d)isn't 为正确项。其他 3 项所使用的助动词或动词均与课文中上述句子的结构不符。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的动词 rouse 意即"唤起",而选项(d)awakens 的意思也是"唤起",因此该项为正确项。选项(a)is risen 中的动词 rise 为不及物动词,不能用于被动语态,可以说 an emotion rises in sb.。选项(b)raises(举起,升起)没有"唤起"的含义。选项(c)arises(起来,升起)为不及物动词,不能用于被动语态。

10. (a)

课文中使用的 catching a glimpse of a light 意即"瞥见一线光芒",副词 briefly 意即"即逝地"、"短暂地",选项(a)briefly seeing 意即"短暂地看到",也就是说"瞥见",与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)viewing(看,眺望)、选项(c)examining(审视)和选项(d)experiencing(经历)都与原句所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

11. (c)

课文中使用的名词 longing 意即"渴望",选项(c)desire 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)grief(悲痛,伤心)、选项

(b)sadness(悲痛，伤心)和选项(d)sorrow(悲哀，忧愁)都与其表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

12. (d)

课文中使用的名词 significance 此处意即“意义”，选项(d)meaning 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)explanation(解释)、选项(b)force(力量)和选项(c)power(权利)都与其不同义，故均为错误项。

测试 2 答案

理解练习参考答案

1. Printing and television were both revolutionary when they were invented, both are relatively expensive to the producers, and both relatively cheap to the receiver.
2. Television differs from printing because it is relatively ephemeral and because it appeals to those who can read as well as to those who can't.
3. Educationists objected to television for two reasons: they saw it as an enemy of reading and said that it was just a 'flash in the pan'.
4. The 'situation' referred to by the author is the attitude of educationists to television when it was invented, and it has altered because people have realized that television is no 'flash in the pan'.

词汇练习参考答案

a method of communication (l. 1) = a way of exchanging information with people

characteristics (l. 3) = special qualities which can easily be recognized

reluctant (l. 5) = unwilling and perhaps slow to act, not at all eager or keen to act

relatively (l. 7) = comparatively, quite

mass media (l. 7) = forms or channels of communication that reach a great many people (such as radio, television and newspapers)

ephemeral (l.9) = lasting only a short time

rival (l.14) = competitor, opponent

detrimental (l.15) = having a harmful or damaging effect on people

句子结构练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

段落练习参考答案

A. The best phrase that would serve as a title for this passage is 'Television and education' because, although the passage begins by comparing television and printing as methods of communication, most of it is concerned with the attitude of educationists towards television.

B. See text.

C. 1. TV and printing similar: costly to produce, but cheap for receiver.

2. Both mass media—reach great numbers.

3. However, they differ: printed word—permanent—communicate over centuries.

4. TV—relatively ephemeral—pictures and minds—millions at same time.

5. TV also appeals to literate and illiterate people.

D. The situation has now altered and television has come to stay. Educationists are now trying to gain access to its power, often by trying to use traditional methods of teaching through television. The trouble with television,

Lesson 25
Non-auditory effects of noise
噪音的非听觉效应

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. He means: The whole idea of reducing or getting rid of noise (in the modern world) is a good aim which is likely to lose people's support if the arguments for it become associated with inexact or unsupported scientific argument.
2. A modern navy is a good place to study noise because the noise of jet aircraft on an aircraft carrier must be one of the most unpleasant environments you could think of in which to work—for noise, that is.

词汇练习参考答案

The police immediately began an *investigation* into the murder of the old man.

Even when they thought they had the right man, they realized they had *inadequate evidence* on which to charge him.

The noise has increased so much near their local airport that they are starting a noise *abatement* society.

The prisoner made a serious *allegation* of cruelty against the men who arrested him.

It's a beautiful sweater; the only *snag* is, I can't afford it.

I am always extremely *cautious* about what I read in that particular newspaper.
At this time of the year, ice on the roads is a real *hazard*.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. Many people do not believe noise affects health.
   2. Noise abatement campaigners — inadequate evidence to support case.
   3. Often alleged—noise produces mental illness.
   4. Woman claimed — noise of office typewriters — mental hospital.
   5. Problem with argument: difficult to distinguish cause and effect. Noise cause mental illness? Or complaints about noise merely a symptom?

B. Although many people do not believe that noise affects people's health, those that campaign for noise abatement unfortunately sometimes use inadequate evidence to support their case. It is often alleged that noise produces mental illness, and a woman has actually claimed that the noise of office typewriters eventually sent her into a mental hospital. The problem with this argument is that it is extremely difficult to distinguish between cause and effect: in other words, did the noise *cause* her mental illness, or were her complaints about noise merely a *symptom*? (90 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Noise in modern life.]

Most people in this modern world have grown accustomed to living and working against a background of noise, almost

constant noise. In the street there is the noise of traffic—engine noises, car alarms, the screeching of tyres and brakes, in factories there is the continual drumming of machines of all kinds, and in the office there is the noise of office equipment—the tap-tap-tap of computer keyboard keys, the ringing of telephones, fax machines and so on. Even in the home, where labour-saving devices have made life so much easier for many people, some of the comfort has been at the expense of noise—vacuum cleaners, washing machines, dishwashers and air extractors; they all make a noise, even if manufacturers try to tell us sometimes that their machines are 'silent'! And even in the countryside, or in your own back garden in the city, there are always aeroplanes overhead—large passenger jet aircraft, helicopters, and even, sometimes, military jet aircraft.

In our modern industrial society, hardly anywhere is free from noise. In towns and cities, particularly, the problem has become acute. And yet people have learned to live against this background and do not seem to be affected. Indeed, some people even seem to require noise as a necessary environment in which to work: 'muzak' in the workplace, in shops, in hotels is a perfect example of the need for 'noise', for that is all 'muzak' is.

We seem to be helpless to do anything about reducing noise in this modern world and many have come to accept it as one of the more unpleasant features of modern civilization. And although few of us complain about it, this is one of the main reasons that people give for going to an island, the countryside, the hills or the mountains for the weekend, or for their annual holiday—'To get away from everything, especially the noise'.

(316 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. *Many roads which we use* were not built for such heavy traffic.

2. *The heavy snow which fell last week* has now begun to melt.

3. *The party of tourists which we had in our hotel at the weekend* left this morning.

4. *The clerk who took the original telephone call* apologized for the mistake.

B. 1. A large animal *frequently seen* near our village has proved to be a black panther.

2. One ridiculous argument *sometimes heard* is that failure is a necessary part of progress.

3. One sight *generally considered* worth visiting is the old church on the cliffs.

C. 1. Have you written back to your penfriend *yet*?

2. I haven't told them about the concert *yet*.

3. I don't know how many old girlfriends he has, but Gail is *yet another* in a long line.

D. 1. *On opening* the door, I got a surprise.

2. *On seeing* me approaching, he ran towards me.

3. *On being asked* to leave the meeting, he got very angry.

4. *On arriving* at the station, she bought a ticket.

E. At the sight of the bank robbers with their guns, the girl was *reduced to* a quivering jelly.

The police are still trying to establish the *cause of* the accident.

The local Health Officer has received lots of *complaints*

about the standard of hygiene in that café.

Most spokesmen for government departments are extremely *cautious about* saying anything which can be understood too easily.

At the youth hostel, Karla had to *share* a room *with* a girl she had never met.

It's been said that such horrific sights on television news can have dreadful *effects upon* young children.

Modern *methods of* tracing the source of a disease do not always seem to be very effective.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. While the verb *regard* can mean 'look at in a stated way', it tends to be used to mean 'consider in a stated way': *I have always regarded him with the greatest admiration.*

Look at means 'turn the eyes so as to see something': *What are you looking at?*

2. The words *affect* and *effect* are easily confused.

The verb *affect* means 'cause some result or change in; influence': *Will the miners' strike affect the price of coal?*

Effect is a noun meaning 'a result or condition produced by a cause' or 'something that happens when one thing acts on another': *Fortunately the miners' strike had little effect on the price of coal.*

3. A *plea* is 'an urgent or serious request': *The British government has sent India a plea for mercy for the man accused of drug smuggling.* (The verb closely

associated with the noun *plea* is *plead* 〈*for*〉.)

The verb *please* means 'make... happy, or give satisfaction (to)': *The assistants in that store are eager to please all their customers.*

4. The word *objective* is both an adjective and a noun. As an adjective, it means 'existing outside the mind, real, not influenced by personal feelings': *You must try to be more objective in dealing with these problems.*

   As a noun, an *objective* is 'an aim, especially one that must be worked towards over a long period': *Our objective is to achieve full, or near-full employment over the next ten years.*

   An *objection* (from the verb *object*) is 'a statement or feeling of opposition or disapproval': *If you have no objection, I'll lock up now.*

5. The verb *confirm* means 'give support or certainty to (a fact, etc.) e.g. by providing more proof or by stating that something is true or correct': *He said he would accept the job, so we have asked him to confirm his acceptance in writing.*

   The verb *assure* (not to be confused with *ensure* or *insure*) means 'tell firmly and with confidence, especially with the aim of removing doubt': *She assured me that the medicine was safe to take.*

B. like (*v.*)—*dislike* (l.3) adequate—*inadequate* (l.3)
   credit (*v.*)—*discredit* (l.5) pleasant—*unpleasant* (l.17)

C. 1. *brought up* = educated and cared for
   2. *brought up* = asked, mentioned
   3. *bring him round* = cause him to regain consciousness

4. *brought back* = reminded me of

5. *brought the house down* = caused great admiration, probably with a lot of applause (and possible whistles and shouting)

6. *bring to mind* = remember

7. *bring out* = cause to be seen, make clear

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第 4 ~ 5 行“This is a pity, because noise abatement really is a good cause, and it is likely to be discredited if it gets to be associated with bad science(要求减少噪音确实是件好事,但是如果与拙劣的科学掺杂在一起的话,就不会被人所信任,所以这是很遗憾的)”,得知防止噪音受到人们的谴责是非常重要的,因此选项(d)prevent it from getting a bad name(防止它有个坏名声)为正确项。重要的并不在于让人们了解噪音的影响,因此选项(a)understand that noise affects people(了解噪音对人有影响)为错误项。选项(b)understand the people who dislike noise(理解那些不喜欢噪音的人们)也并不是本文所关注的事情。选项(c)make sure we have a quieter society(确保我们有一个较安静的社会环境)也与课文所述不符,因此也为错误项。

2. (b)

根据课文第 10 ~ 11 行“Now the snag in this sort of anecdote is of course that one cannot distinguish cause and

effect(这类奇闻的疑难之处是无法区别因果关系)",可以清楚地知道有关那个打字员的事情并不能证实噪音就是得病的原因,因此选项(b)do not help us to understand the effects of noise(并不能帮助我们了解噪音的影响)为正确项。选项(a)help us to understand the effects of noise(帮助我们了解噪音的影响)与事实正好相反,故为错误项。选项(c)show how noise can produce mental illness(表明噪音是如何能导致精神疾病的)与课文所述意义不符,文章并没有说明噪音是如何导致精神疾病的。选项(d)cause considerable distress(导致明显沮丧)是那个打字员的精神表现,并未说明就是噪音导致的。

3. (a)

根据课文第 15～17 行"Some time ago the United States Navy, for instance, examined a very large number of men working on aircraft carriers: the study was known as Project Anehin(例如,美国海军前些时候调查了许多在航空母舰上工作的人,这次调查被称之为"安内英工程")",得知这个项目提供了一次对许多人进行调查的机会,因此选项(a)study the effects of noise on a large number of people(对许多人进行噪音影响研究)为正确项。该项工程是了解噪音对人的影响,而不是了解在航空母舰上的生活如何,因此选项(b)consider what life is like on aircraft carriers(了解航空母舰上的生活是什么样的)为错误项。文章说该项工程并未证明噪音对人们有害,因此选项(c)conclude that noise has bad effects on people(得出噪音对人们有不良影响的结论)为错误项。选项(d)explore the workings of the United States Navy(探索美国海军的运行机制)也并不是该项工程的课题,因此为错误项。

4. (d)

根据课文第 19～20 行“But neither psychiatric interviews nor objective tests were able to show any effects upon these American sailors(但是,不管是进行精神病学的调查访问,还是进行客观的测试,都不能显示噪音对这些美国水兵有任何影响)”,表明该项工程并未证明噪音对人体有害,因此选项(d)doesn't appear to have any bad effects(似乎并没有任何不良影响)为正确项。虽然该项工程并未证明噪音对人有什么不良影响,可是也未确切地证明噪音对人毫无任何坏的影响,因此选项(a)has no ill effects at all(根本就没有任何坏的影响)也为错误项。人们只是根据得出的结论推断噪音对人精神的影响只会比孤儿院要小,而不是得出这样的结论,因此选项(b)is less dangerous than being brought up in an orphanage(比在孤儿院长大所受的危害要小一些)为错误项。选项(c)is really bad for the health(对身体的确有害)与该项工程所得出的结论不同,故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

课文中使用的是“介词 on + 动词的-ing 形式”,表示动作同时发生。选项(d)When 引导一个时间状语从句,表达动作同时发生。when 常用来表示当某一短暂性动作发生时另一个延续性动作正在发生,如:I was just going out when there was a knock at the door.(我正出去时,听到敲门声。)该句子中的主句动作 go out 为延续性动作,从句中的 a knock 为短暂性动作。此外 when 还可用来表示当某短暂性动作发生时另一个短暂性动作同时发生,如该题从句中的 turn 和主句中的 learn 就是短暂动作,所以该项为正确项。选项(a)As 也可以引导时间状语从句,

同，因此选项(a)if 为正确项。选项(b)unless 引导条件状语从句，表示“除非”，如：I will not go to France unless the firm pays my expenses.(除非公司支付我的费用，否则我不去法国。)选项(c)in case 引导目的状语从句，表示“以防”，如：I've got the key in case we want to go inside.(我拿到了钥匙，以防我们想进去。)选项(d)lest 与 in case 意思相同，但在现代英语中很少用，除非在文学作品中，如：We must take care lest evil thoughts enter our hearts.(我们必须小心，以免罪恶的念头进入我们的心灵。)

8. (c)

课文中使用的是 less...than 引导的比较状语从句，表示“小于”、“少于”，选项(c)not so...as 可以引导比较状语从句，表示“不如”，如：He is not so/as successful as his sister.(他不如他姐姐那么成功。)这种结构在非正式英语中比 less than 更为常用，所以该项为正确项。选项(a)not...as 中缺少 so 或 as，因此为错误项。选项(b)not so...than 中的连词不应是 than 而应为 as。选项(d)no as...as 中不能用 no 而应用 not。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的是表示“可能的”形容词 likely，选项(d)probable为形容词，也可用来表示“可能的”，与 likely 同义，意即“非常有可能是真的或非常有可能发生”，因此为正确项。选项(a)perhaps 与 maybe 同义，是副词，表示“可能”，但是并不肯定，如：Perhaps Andrew is right.(也许安德鲁是对的。)因此为错误项。选项(b)acceptable(可接受的)与 likely 所表达的意思不同，故为错误项。选项(c)certain(肯定的)并不是“可能的”，故为错误项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的副词 eventually 意即“最终”,选项(b)In the end 所表达的意思与其相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)At least 的意思是“至少”,为错误项。选项(c)At the finish 表示“到最后”、“在最后”,如:He was in at the finish.(他一直留到最后。)与 eventually 所表达的意思不同,因此为错误项。选项(d)In fact 的意思是“事实上”,与 eventually 所表达的意思不同,故为错误项。

11. (c)

课文中使用的名词 snag 意即“障碍”、“困难”,选项(c)difficulty(困难)意思与其相近,因此为正确项。选项(a)case(事例)、选项(b)knot(结,纠葛)和选项(d)weakness(弱点)都与 snag 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的动词 confirm 意即“证实”,选项(a)verifies 的意思与其相同,如:The police verified that she had an airtight alibi.(警察证实,她不在犯罪现场的证据无懈可击。)选项(b)certifies 的意思是“证明”,如:Can you certify this to be a true copy?(你能证明这是原件吗?)选项(c)exemplifies的意思是“举例说明”,与 confirm 不同义,因此为错误项。选项(d)certificates 只能作名词,意思是“证书”,故为错误项。

Lesson 26
The past life of the earth
地球上的昔日生命

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Animals or plants which lived in or near water are most likely to be preserved because they will be covered over quickly by mud and silt.
2. Dead bodies of animals usually decompose or are quickly destroyed by the weather or eaten by other creatures.
3. The remains of the Beresovka mammoth were accidentally preserved because it fell into an ice crevasse and was immediately frozen, as in a freezer.

词汇练习参考答案

Except for the wooden floors, the old building is in a good state of *preservation*.

They found lots of old cups and saucers and *the like* in a small rubbish tip in the grounds of the large house.

When the factory closed down, the machinery was sold off for *a small fraction* of its true value.

We describe vultures as *scavengers* because they feed on dead animals.

We have made *innumerable* attempts to interview the Minister

about this question, but with no success.

We discovered that the terrible smell in the cellar came from a *decomposing* rat.

Eagles will often build their nests in totally *inaccessible* places, for example on a ledge on a cliff face.

The painting found in the attic was in a dreadful state, but it has now been *restored* and looks fine.

As the man drove his car into the field, it became *promptly bogged* down in the mud.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. Extinct animals near water—likely to be preserved—covered with mud and silt.

2. If animals not preserved quickly, will decompose or be eaten.

3. Land animals and birds—rarely preserved—not covered by anything.

4. They die, decompose, destroyed by weather, eaten by creatures.

B. Extinct animals which lived in or near water were most likely to be preserved because they were quickly covered with mud and silt. If animals are not preserved quickly in this way, they will decay, decompose or be eaten by scavengers. Animals that lived on land, and birds of course, are much more rarely preserved because there is seldom anything to cover them. When they die, they decompose and are quickly destroyed by the weather or eaten by other creatures. (80 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Extinct forms of animal life.]

People find it difficult to resist the fascination of a natural history museum where the skeletons and fossils of extinct forms of life are on display. It is this fascination, too, felt by so many people, that attracts them to adventure stories like *The Lost World* or films like *Jurassic Park*.

What sorts of things can one see in a natural history museum? The remains of animals that existed in prehistoric times. Sometimes we can see just parts of a creature, sometimes the whole skeleton. There are reptiles, dinosaurs and tyrannosaurs. There are pterodactyls, the horrific-looking creatures with long, tooth-filled beaks, which were the ancestors of our present-day birds. There are the remains of fish, small and large, especially early sharks, and there are fossilized crustaceans. There are the remains of early mammals, too, and what is for most people perhaps the most fascinating, the remains of our own ancestors, early man such as Neanderthal man.

Museums also display the remains of animals which have become extinct relatively recently, like the flightless bird called the dodo. It is sad to think that the dodo only became extinct about three hundred years ago, and would probably not have become extinct if Europeans had not hunted it on its native island of Mauritius in the Indian Ocean. How many more forms of animal life are in danger of becoming extinct today that our children will only see in museums?

And then of course there are those creatures which have been called 'living fossils'—primitive forms of life which came

into being millions of years ago and which have surprisingly survived, apparently without developing greatly. Examples are the coelacanth (the fish that was first discovered earlier in the twentieth century) and the duck-billed platypus in Australlia.

(293 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. The archaeologists are waiting *until* the weather improves before they continue digging.

2. *After* they die, most land animals decompose or they are eaten by other creatures.

3. I will telephone you *as soon as* I get to London.

4. They have promised to phone us *when* they have some definite news.

B. 1. The old lady does not go out in the winter, *for* she feels the cold a great deal.

2. I've got a present *for* you.

C. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The adjective *favourable* (in the text) means 'advantageous': *The company will lend you money on very favourable terms.*

The adjective *favourite* means 'most loved': *My favourite snack is a small bar of chocolate.*

2. *Alive* and *living* are easily confused.

The adjective *alive* means 'having life, not dead' and, like similar adjectives *asleep*, *awake*, *alight*, etc., cannot be used before a noun: *Are your*

grandparents still alive? He's the only man alive who could do it.

(Note that we must use *alive*, not *living*, in the expression *dead or alive*.)

The adjective *living* means 'alive now': *She has no living relatives.*

(Remember that the noun *living* is 'a means of providing oneself with what is necessary for life': *What do you do for a living? She earns a living as a writer.*)

3. *Avoid* means 'keep away from, or keep out of the way of': *I had to swerve to avoid the old man who was walking in the road.*

   The verb *prevent*, however, means 'stop (something) happening or stop (someone) doing something'.

   It is often used with the preposition *from*: *What can we do to prevent this disease (from) spreading?*

B. 1. Can you ask your father to move his car? It's *in the way*.

   2. I stopped *on the way* here to visit my uncle.

   3. *In a way* I can see what you mean, but I can't agree with you completely.

   4. Oh, *by the way*, while we're talking about old college friends, have you heard from John lately?

C. 1. *due to* = because of, caused by, as a result of

   2. *due to* = expected or supposed to

   3. *due* = what rightfully belongs to somebody, especially something non-material

   4. *due* = directly, exactly

D. 1. Please do *as* I say.

2. He was white *as* a sheet.

3. He left *as* suddenly *as* he came.

4. Don't act *like* a baby.

5. The carnivores, *like* sabre-toothed cats, . . .

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 1～2 行"for one of the necessary conditions of preservation is quick burial(因为保存的必要条件之一是迅速掩埋)",得知要完好地保存动植物遗体的一个重要条件之一是迅速地掩埋,因此选项(c)covered up quickly in the right conditions(迅速地在合适的条件下被掩埋)为正确项。文中说在海洋和河流中不断淤积的淤泥可以快速地将动植物遗体覆盖,但是动植物遗体的保存必要条件不是在海洋和河流中,所以选项(a)in seas and rivers(在海洋和河流中)为错误项。选项(b)under the ground(在地底下)和选项(d)preserved near water(保存在水的附近)都不是保存动植物遗体的重要条件。

2. (b)

根据课文第 8～9 行"The remains of plants and animals that lived on land are much more rarely preserved, for there is seldom anything to cover them over(曾在陆地上生活过的动植物的遗体被保存下来的更为罕见,因为陆地上几乎没有什么东西覆盖它们)",得知选项(b)is relatively rare(相对罕见)为正确项。选项(a)is quite

common(相当普遍)与课文所述意义正好相反，因此为错误项。课文明确地说明内陆的条件不利于保存动植物遗体，因此选项(c)occurs where there are great numbers of species(发生在有很多动物种类的地方)和选项(d)is always possible in favourable circumstances(在有利的情况下总是有可能的)均为错误项。

3. (c)

根据课文第13～15行"It is almost always due to some very special circumstances that traces of land animals survive, as by falling into inaccessible caves, or into an ice crevasse...as in a refrigerator(几乎总是由于某些特殊的条件，陆地动物的遗体才被保存下来，如掉进难以到达的洞穴，或掉进冰河裂缝里……像被放进冰箱里一样被保存下来)"，得知冰冻是保存动物遗体的条件之一，因此选项(c) freezing conditions(冰冻条件)为正确项。选项(a)mammoths(长毛象)是一种动物，而不是保存动物遗体的条件。若动物掉进冰冻缝隙，其遗体有可能被保存下来，冰冻而不是缝隙是必要条件，因此选项(b)crevasses(缝隙)为错误项。选项(d)fir trees(冷杉树)并不是保存动植物遗体的条件，只是一种植物。

4. (b)

根据课文第20～22行"Apparently what happened was that water collected on these tar pits, and the bigger animals like the elephants ventured out on to the apparently firm surface to drink, and were promptly bogged in the tar(显然，事情的经过是这样：沥青坑里积存了水，大象那样的较大的动物冒险到似乎坚固的水面上去饮水，立即掉进了沥青坑)"，得知大象之所以被困在沥青坑里，是因为它们被沥青坑看似坚硬的表面所欺骗，

不好，我们的旅行取消了。)可是选项(b)owing 中缺少介词 to，故为错误项。on account of 的意思是“为了……缘故”、“因为”，可是选项(c)on account 中缺少介词 of，故为错误项。

8. (d)

课文中使用的是动词 have。英语中可以说 have a meal，也可以说 eat a meal，所以选项(d)ate 为正确项。选项(a)was eaten 为被动语态，但是该句中的主语是人称代词 he，即动作的实施者，而不是 meal，因此应该用主动语态。选项(b)is eating 的时态不正确，动作发生在过去，应该用过去时。选项(c)has eaten 也是时态使用不当，应该用过去时态。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

课文中使用的形容词 innumerable 意即“数不清的”，选项(a) countless 与其同义，因此为正确项。形容词 uncountable 在英语中只表示“不可数的”，因此选项(b)uncountable是错误的。uncounted 在英语里表示“未数的”，因此选项(c)uncounted 是错误的。unnumbered 在英语里表示“未写上或印上数字的”，因此选项(d)unnumbered也是错误的。

10. (b)

课文中使用的动词 decompose 意即“腐烂”，选项(b)decay 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a) die(死亡)、选项(c)fall away(变差，变得更糟糕)和选项(d)are buried(被掩埋)都与 decompose 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的副词 apparently 意即“似乎”、“表面上”，选

项(a)It seems that 所表达的意思与其相同，因此该项为正确项。it looks like 表示“看来好像”，如：It looks like rain.（看来好像要下雨。）选项(b)It looks 中不但缺少 like，而且用于该句中句子结构也不正确。选项(c)He appears 如果是 It appears that 就正确了。选项(d)It shows(表明)与 apparently 所表达的意思不符，故为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的副词 promptly 意即“迅速地”，选项(c)quickly与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)apparently(似乎)、选项(b)finally(最终)和选项(d)eventually(最终)都与 promptly 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

Lesson 27
The *Vasa*
"瓦萨"号

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The *Vasa* was regarded as an important ship when she was built because she had been designed by Gustavus Adolphus and she had been decorated more richly than any other ship.
2. It took three years (to build the *Vasa*).
3. She is described as a 'floating work of art' because she was almost covered with carvings and ornament.

词汇练习参考答案

The *galleon* they made for the film was an exact replica of one of the large wooden sailing ships that came from Spain in the seventeenth century.

The woman didn't do any of the cooking herself, but she *dictated* the kinds of menu that she wanted the chef to prepare.

Very few countries could resist the *might* of the Roman army at the height of the Roman Empire.

Like the *Vasa*, the English ship, the *Mary Rose*, also sank on her *maiden voyage*.

The week before the coronation, the whole city was *in a*

ferment of excitement.

Modern cartoons make great use of *zoomorphic* animal figures—pigs that can speak, lions that wear royal clothes, snakes that are evil robbers, and so on.

As we came up the road, we recognized the house we were looking for: it was *ablaze* with lights.

In British history, King Richard Ⅲ is usually *portrayed* as a wicked man.

The large wheels of the ferry-boat *churned* up the water so much that small boats were in danger of being swamped.

As we sailed out of the enclosed harbour into the open sea, the wind *freshened* a great deal.

The weather had been beautiful, so we were surprised when a *sudden squall* blew up from the south bringing some rain with it.

The men unloaded the *ballast* of rock from the boat before filling it with grain.

As they threw open the large doors, there was a great *inrush* of bitterly cold air.

The cruiser had already been hit badly by two torpedoes, but a third torpedo which hit her right in the engine room *sealed the ship's fate*.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. People of Stockholm watched *Vasa*—magnificent—high stern castle carved.

2. Cannon thundered salute— *Vasa*'s guns answered.

3. Emerged from gun smoke—more majestic.

4. Ship hit by squall—listed to port.

5. Watchers heard noise—cargo, ballast, people crashed to port.
6. Lower gun-ports below water—ship sank.

B. As the people of Stockholm watched the *Vasa* spread her sails, she looked magnificent, her high stern castle carved with figures and animal shapes in bright colours. The cannon of anchored warships thundered a salute which the *Vasa*'s guns answered, and as she emerged from the gun smoke, she looked even more majestic. Suddenly the ship was hit by a squall and listed to port. As she did, the watchers on shore heard the noise as cargo, ballast and people crashed to the port side. The moment the lower gun-ports went below water, the sea rushed in and she sank.

(100 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Recovering lost treasure from the sea.]

When a ship sank in the past, there were extreme difficulties in salvaging the wreck. Quite clearly that was true of a ship that sank in very deep water—and indeed it still is. But even if a ship sank in relatively shallow water, in a harbour, for example, there was very little hope of recovering any lost treasure or indeed of recovering anything else from the wreck. In most cases, even bodies of men who went down with the ship would remain in it.

Modern diving techniques, of course, have made salvaging far less difficult. A shipwreck can be discovered and investigated by sonar, and skin divers can go down and investigate the wreck before any serious salvage work is begun.

The same modern diving techniques have also meant that hunting for treasure can be carried out not only by experts but also by amateurs. So quite a lot of amateur divers spend their weekends and holidays diving for 'treasure'.

What kinds of treasure can be recovered? And where from? Not surprisingly there are shipwrecks all around the coast of Great Britain and other islands in the world. The Mediterranean Sea, too, is an excellent hunting ground for salvagers and treasure hunters. Many of the Roman and Greek ships at the bottom of the Sea are full of works of art. The sea off the coast of Florida and around the Bahamas is another hunting ground, this time for gold from Spanish galleons.

Many shipwrecks, of course, do not contain treasure in terms of gold, silver, jewels or works of art. But they all contain another kind of 'treasure': they contain the weapons used on ships (the cannon, swords, and so on), everyday articles of clothing (shoes, leather belts, etc.) and items of everyday use (plates, bottles, etc.). All of these 'treasures' teach us a great deal about the history of the time.

(314 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. I heard him *open the door and step into the room*.

2. I noticed *someone turn away from the crowd and take out a mobile phone*.

3. Did you see *anyone leave by the back door?*

C. 1. They had laboured *for* three years...

2. *Since* 1628 few attempts had been made to salvage the

Vasa.

3. *For* nearly three and a half centuries she lay...

D. 1. In the deep dark forest *there lived* an old man who was said to be a hundred years old.

2. *There seemed* little point in speaking to him because he was obviously not going to change his mind.

E. We all *went shopping* last Saturday.

Shall we *go swimming* this afternoon?

We won't *go sailing* again until next July.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *spread* = open out, stretch out

2. *spread* = make or become widely known

3. *Spread* = Put (a covering) on

4. *spread* = stretch out, so as to cover the table

B. 1. *produce* = make by using skill and imagination

2. *produce* = show, bring out, or offer for examination

3. *produced* = prepared and brought before the public

4. *produce* = grow

C. 1. *peeped* = came partly into view

2. *peered* = looked very carefully or hard, as if not able to see clearly

3. *glanced* = gave a quick short look

4. *caught a glimpse* = caught a quick look or incomplete view

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第1～2行"From the seventeenth-century empire of Sweden, the story of a galleon that sank at the start of her maiden voyage in 1628 must be one of the strangest tales of the sea(1628年,一艘大帆船在处女行开始时就沉没了,这个从17世纪瑞典帝国流传至今的故事无疑是航海史上最离奇的事件之一)",得知"瓦萨"号帆船失事早已在沉船之时就被人所知,因此选项(b) had been known for centuries(人们已经知道有几个世纪了)为正确项。选项(a) was discovered in 1956(于1956年被发现)比较有迷惑性,如果不仔细看清题目,就有可能选错。课文中提到于1956年发现了沉船所在的位置,而不是到1956年才发现该船失事,因此该项为错误项。文章中谈到最初建造这艘船的目的是让这艘船在日益增长的瑞典势力中起到主导作用,但是第一次出航就失事了,因此不可能起到该作用,故选项(c) played a leading role in the growing might of Sweden(在不断增长的瑞典势力中起到主要的作用)为错误项。该船首次出航就沉没了,因此选项(d) increased the King's reputation as 'The Northern Hurricane'(提高了国王作为"北方飓风"的名气)为错误项。

2. (c)

课文第15～18行对"瓦萨"号首航时的描写如下:"As she emerged from her drifting cloud of gun smoke with the water churned to foam beneath her bow, her flags flying,

pennants waving, sails filling in the breeze, and the red and gold of her superstructure ablaze with colour, she presented a more majestic spectacle than Stockholmers had ever seen before.(当'瓦萨'号从弥漫的礼炮烟云中出现时,船头下浪花四溅,舰旗迎风招展,三角旗随风飘动,微风鼓起风帆,金碧辉煌的船楼闪耀着灿烂的色彩。'瓦萨'号展现的壮观景象是斯德哥尔摩人从未见过的。)"根据上述描写,可以知道当时斯德哥尔摩人被壮观景象所打动,因此选项(c)the people of Stockholm must have been very impressed by the spectacle(斯德哥尔摩人肯定被那壮观的景象所打动)为正确项。选项(a)it must have been immediately obvious she was going to sink(当时肯定非常明显要沉没)与课文描述的意义不符,刚开始并没有任何会沉没的迹象,因此该项为错误项。该题的时间状语是 at the launch of the *Vasa*,意即在"瓦萨"号刚启航时,当时事故并未发生,因此人们不可能失望,所以选项(b)everyone in Stockholm was depressed by the event(斯德哥尔摩所有的人对这个事件都非常失望)为错误项。文中说水手们是崇尚迷信的,而并未判断他们的迷信是否对错,因此(d)the sailors knew they had been right to be superstitious(船员们知道他们迷信是对的)为错误项。

3.(d)

根据课文第 21~22 行"The Ordnance Officer ordered all the port cannon to be heaved to starboard to counteract the list, but the steepening angle of the decks increased(炮长命令把左舷上所有的大炮搬到右舷上来以抵消船的倾斜,但是甲板的倾斜度仍在增加)",得知当时首先采取的手段就是将左舷的炮移到右舷,从中可以判断出当时是由于左舷太沉,因此选项(d)the cannon made one side of

平)、lie(躺下,躺)、lie(说谎)。lay 的过去式和过去分词都是 laid,如:I laid the papers on the table.(我将报纸平铺在桌子上。)lie(躺下,躺)的过去式和过去分词分别是 lay、lain,如:He lay in bed all day.(他整天躺在床上。)lie(说谎)为规则动词,它的过去式或过去分词都是 lied,如:You lied to me when you said you loved me.(你对我说你爱我时,是在骗我。)综上所述,选项(a)lied 和选项(b)laid 都为错误项。选项(d)lying 为该动词的现在分词,与句子所用时态不符,故为错误项。

6.(a)

本题考查动词的时态。课文中使用的是过去完成时,表示经历了多长时间的努力才建成了这艘船。该句中只是陈述一个事实,故应该用一般过去时,所以选项(a)laboured为正确项,而其他 3 个选项所用时态均不正确。

7.(c)

reply to 表示"回答"、"回应",如:She didn't reply to my letter.(她没回我的信。)因此选项(c)to 为正确项。其他 3 个选项中的介词都不能用于 reply 的后面。

8.(c)

英语中表达"出生"通常用 be born,如:Hundreds of children are born deaf every year.(每年都有成千的聋哑儿诞生。)My parents were born in Scotland.(我父母出生在苏格兰。)所以选项(c)born 为正确项。选项(a)was borne 中的 borne,为 bear(生育;承受)的过去分词,或用于完成时态表示"生育",如:She has borne six children in seven years.(她 7 年中生了 6 个孩子。)或(并更常)作为 bear(承受)的过去分词使用。选项(b)born 中应该有 be 动词。选项(d)has borne 则表示主动生育。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的名词是 tales(故事),选项(d)stories 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)mysteries(秘密,奥秘)、选项(b)tails(尾巴)和选项(c)storeys(楼层)都与 tales 的词义不符,故均为错误项。

10. (d)

课文中使用的名词是 might(势力),选项(d)power 与其同义,故该项为正确项。选项(a)ability(能力)、选项(b)forces(军队,部队)和选项(c)expectations(期待,预料)都与 might 的词义不符,故均为错误项。

11. (d)

课文中使用的是介词短语 in a ferment(激动不已),选项(d)in a state of high excitement(处于高度兴奋之中)所表达的意思与其相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)churning(翻滚)、选项(b)boiling(沸腾)和选项(c)fermenting(骚动)都与 in a ferment 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是动词 heave(拖)的被动语态,选项(a)pulled与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)dropped(掉下)、选项(c)lifted(提起)和选项(d)thrown(掷出)都不能表达“拖”的意思,故均为错误项。

Lesson 28
Patients and doctors
病人与医生

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Doctors readily provide their patients with medicines because it is the easiest way to get rid of them.
2. The anecdote about Thomas Carlyle illustrates the author's argument because it shows the absolute trust patients place in tangible remedies like medicine.

词汇练习参考答案

Everyone says our team will win, but personally I'm extremely *sceptical* about it.

Throughout his career, my grandfather *fervently* believed in the right of workers to strike for better conditions.

It is said that the water from this particular spring possesses powerful *curative properties*.

When I first went to Turkey and used 'lire', I just couldn't get used to the *astronomical figures* they deal in.

Sculpture is a *tangible* form of art.

The murderer was caught in the act of *disposing* of the body.

The man's request for leave of absence to visit his family was finally *granted*.

'I am afraid Mr. White is suffering from a slight *indisposition*,' the man's secretary said rather pompously.

I am tired of *putting up with* his general bad behaviour.

They apologized for any *inconvenience* caused by the roadworks.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. Lost faith in many things — still great confidence in power of medicine.

2. Proof: astronomical rise of drug bill.

3. Patients expect to take home remedy.

4. Easiest way to get rid of patients — doctors happy to oblige.

5. Advice valuable, but time-consuming and not appreciated.

B. We may have lost our faith in many things in this modern world, but we still have great confidence in the power of medicine. The proof of this is in the astronomical rise of the drug bill of the British Health Services. Further, most patients expect to take home some tangible remedy and, since this is the easiest way of getting rid of patients, those in charge are happy to oblige. After all, giving advice is both time-consuming and little-oppreciated. (80 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[A public health service is an essential part of social welfare.]

Everyone in society should have the right to a full and free health service and no one should have the right to buy good health care. If all working adults pay taxes, then they, their

children and their parents should expect free medical service, at a doctor's surgery or at a hospital, a free emergency ambulance service, and at least free dental treatment.

It has often been said that a public health service is expensive to run and that it is often abused. While it *is* expensive to run, and it is, like many social services, open to abuse, it seems nevertheless to be one of the things that a modern society must offer its citizens.

There is of course one major problem, and that is the cost of the people who work in it—the doctors, nurses, surgeons, dentists and administrative staff. Such people often complain that they do not receive the wages or salaries that they could earn in the world of private medical care or in a totally different profession. And because a health service, like other public services, is run on government lines, bureaucracy often creeps in so that the administration can cost more than the medical services and treatment.

Does a public health service work in all countries? No, it doesn't. There are countries where a public health service seems to be an impossibility: America is a perfect example. On the other hand, there are a number of countries in the world which have successful, or moderately successful public health services, for example Sweden, Britain and Israel. Even in a country like Britain, however, there is also a world of private medicine that people can join if they can afford it. A public health service is an excellent idea, but no one should be forced to join it. (303 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. These two words are spelled differently, but they are pronounced *the same as* each other.

2. John and James are twins, but in character they are quite *different from* each other.

B. See text.

C. See text.

D. 1. *Not only* was he handsome, but he was also extremely intelligent.

2. *Never* have I been so embarrassed as I was that evening.

3. *Only now* is she beginning to realize how lucky she was not to be seriously injured in the accident.

E. 1. There are a lot of people who don't *believe in* wasting a doctor's time.

2. They told me that they had every *confidence in* my ability to do the job.

3. The person *in charge of* our department is a very young man.

4. The Smiths have sold their shop and are now *disposing of* the contents.

5. We have asked our teacher to give us some *advice on* careers.

6. When John told me his news, he impressed on me *the need for* complete secrecy.

7. Aspirin is still *prescribed for* the relief of pain.

8. He was *ignorant of* even the basics of operating a computer.

9. A lot of British people *suffer from* colds in the autumn

and winter.

10. Come on, get up: there's nothing *wrong with* you!
11. The scientist was sure that his invention would be of great *benefit in* lots of situations.
12. Expeditions of this nature *demand* a great deal *of* those that take part in them.
13. It won't cause any *inconvenience to* me if they cancel the meeting.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. Note the difference in pronunciation between these two verbs: *cease* /siːs/ and *seize* /siːz/.

Cease means 'stop (especially an activity or state)': *The shop on the corner will cease trading from this weekend.*

Seize means 'take possession of, or take hold of eagerly, quickly or forcefully': *The army seized power in a coup. As he greeted me he seized my hand and shook it warmly.*

2. The verb *receive* means 'come into possession of (something that is given or sent), get': *Have you received an invitation to Stan's party yet?*

A basic meaning of the verb *take* is 'move or carry from one place or position to another': *Don't forget to take your bag when you go.* (The verb of course has many meanings, and students would be advised to note, and check with a dictionary, the many occasions on which they come across the word.)

3. The basic difference in use between the verbs *ask for*

and *ask* is that *ask for* means 'request, hope to receive', while *ask* means 'put a question to (someone), or call for an answer to a question'.
She asked me for my address. She asked a lot of stupid questions.

4. Again note the difference in pronunciation between the noun *advice* /əd'vaɪs/ and the verb *advise* /əd'vaɪz/. *Advice* is a noun which means 'the opinion given to someone about what they should do in a particular situation': *You should ask the doctor for her advice.* *Advise* is the verb which means 'give, say or write advice': *The doctor has advised my father to have complete rest.*
5. The verb *prescribe* means 'say what medicine or treatment a sick person should or must have': *What did the doctor prescribe for the pain in your leg?* *Proscribe*, on the other hand, is formal and means 'forbid, especially by law': *The law of the country proscribes the carrying of weapons.*

B. 1. *in charge of* = responsible for
2. *charged at* = rushed in an attack at
3. *charged (with)* = a criminal charge was brought against him
4. *charge* = ask (someone) to pay

C. 1. You would be *ill-advised* to buy that car: I've got a suspicion it's stolen.
2. You might have been told that I was in the bank that day, but you were *ill-informed*.
3. The defenders of the city were so *ill-prepared* that the

attackers took it in a few days.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 4 ~ 7 行"The majority of the patients attending the medical out-patients departments of our hospitals feel that they have not received adequate treatment unless they are able to carry home with them some tangible remedy in the shape of a bottle of medicine, a box of pills, or a small jar of ointment...(在门诊部看病的大多数人觉得,如果不能带回一些看得见、摸得着的药物,如一瓶药水、一盒药丸、一小瓶药膏回家的话,就不算得到充分的治疗……)",得知选项(a)have some remedy they can take home with them(有可以带回家的药物)为正确项。正是因为病人对药物的信赖才使得他们认为有药带回家才算得到了充分的治疗,而并不是由于信赖药物的疗效才认为得到充分的治疗,所以选项(b)are confident in the curative properties of a bottle of medicine(对一瓶药的疗效充满信心)为错误项。能在门诊部就诊并不等于就得到了充分的治疗,因此选项(c)can attend the medical out-patient departments of hospitals(能在医院的门诊部就诊)为错误项。病人对自己得到的治疗满意与否与国家的花费并没有关系,所以选项(d)see that the state spends more and more money on drugs(看到国家在药品上花费越来越多的钱)为错误项。

can't be cured by a bottle of medicine(一瓶药不可能使你痊愈)并不是人们的错误看法,因此为错误项。那些受过教育的人并不认为自己是医药方面的专家,因此选项(d)they are experts in medical matters(他们是医药方面的专家)为错误项。

4. (d)

根据课文第 21 ~ 23 行"The great advantage of taking medicine is that it makes no demands on the taker beyond that of putting up for a moment with a disgusting taste, and that is what all patients demand of their doctors—to be cured at no inconvenience to themselves(服药的最大优点是:除了暂时忍受一下令人作呕的味道外,对服药人别无其他要求。这也正是病人对医生的要求——病要治好,但不要太麻烦)",得知选项(d)having remedies which don't inconvenience them in any way(服药并不给他们带来任何不便)为正确项。选项(a)finding out what is really wrong with them(检查出他们确实得的是什么病)并不是病人们真正寻求的,所以该项为错误项。选项(b)getting out of a doctor's surgery as quickly as possible(尽可能快地让医生做完手术)因并不是所有的病人都需要做手术所以为错误项。病人们并未将他们的意愿强加给医生,因此选项(c)imposing their will on doctors(将他们的意愿强加给医生)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (a)

课文中使用的是 the majority of patients(大多数病人),而选项(a)Most 可以替代 the majority of 直接用在复数名词前表示"大多数",如 most people(大多数人)、most schools(大多数学校)。选项(b)The most 用于形容词前,

构成形容词的最高级形式，如 the most important discoveries(最重要的发现)。用 majority 表示“大多数”时必须使用 the majority of 结构，因此选项(c)Majority 为错误项。选项(d)Majority of 中缺少定冠词 the，因此为错误项。

6. (b)

课文中使用的是由连词 unless 引导的条件状语从句。由于 unless 等于 if... not，所以课文中主句为否定句 they have not received。该题的主句为肯定句 they have received adequate treatment，因此该句用连词 when 来引导条件句。这样全句所表达的意思与课文所表达的意思相符，所以选项(b)when 为正确项。选项(a)in case(以免)引导目的状语从句，虽然也可以引导条件状语从句，但所表达的意思是“万一”，用于该句时与原文意义不符，因此为错误项。选项(c)until(直到)引导时间状语从句，用于该句时与原文意义不符，故为错误项。选项(d)unless与课文中所用的连词相同，但是如前所述，该题中主句为肯定句而不是像课文中那样为否定句，所以该项为错误项。

7. (c)

课文中用连词 since 引导原因状语从句。选项(c)Because 可以引导原因状语从句，且用于该句时与课文中的意义相符，因此为正确项。选项(a)Therefore为副词，表示“因此”，而不是表示原因，因此为错误项。选项(b)As a result 表示“结果”，也不是原因，故为错误项。选项(d)On account 后需跟“介词 of + 名词”，其意思等于“because of + 名词”，且该处所需的是引导原因状语从句的连词，故也为错误项。

8. (a)

课文中使用的是 nor... only,表示"不仅仅",与选项(a)not only 所表达的意思相符,因此为正确项。选项(b)both必须同时指两个人或物,单纯指一个人或物时不能用 both,故为错误项。选项(c)neither 所表达的意思与 nor...only 不同,因此为错误项。选项(d)nor 不能单独用于陈述句中,只能连接并列句的后一部分,如:The officer didn't believe me, nor did the girls when they came back.(警官不相信我,那些姑娘们回来时也不相信我。)或用于否定回答,如:'I don't like him.' 'Nor do I.'("我不喜欢他。""我也不喜欢他。")

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的名词是 properties(特性),选项(d)qualities 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)substance(物质)、选项(b)possessions(财产)和选项(c)contents(含量)都与 properties 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的名词是 signs(迹象),选项(a)indication 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)signals(信号)、选项(c)signposts(路标)和选项(d)directions(指南)都与 signs 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的形容词是 tangible,意即"看得见、摸得着的",而选项(b)hold in their hands(拿在手中)所表达的意思与其相符,因此为正确项。选项(a)drink(喝)、选项(c)carry(扛)和选项(d)eat(吃)都与 tangible 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

12. (d)

课文中使用的 disposing of 意即“摆脱”，而 get rid of 与其同义，所以选项(d)rid of 为正确项。get on with 意即“进步”、“继续”，所以选项(a)on with 为错误项。get away from 意即“逃脱”、“离开”，所以选项(b)away from 为错误项。get through 意即“完成”、“与……通电话”，所以选项(c)through 为错误项。

Lesson 29
The hovercraft
气垫船

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. A hovercraft works by riding on a cushion of air. The craft is in fact supported on a cushion of low-pressure air which is ringed by a curtain of higher pressure air.
2. Large hovercraft liners could be developed, and 'hovertrains' could replace conventional railways.

词汇练习参考答案

When the company decided to appoint a new IT Manager, they chose *a former* university lecturer.

All the spelling mistakes in my composition are *ringed with* red ink.

The shop owner *ranged* her goods neatly in the shop window.

We spent hours trying to find *a solution to the problem* of how to cross the river.

The singer *caused a sensation* when he gave a concert in a small village.

The jet-skier was *riding smoothly* over the water when he suddenly hit a small rock and flipped over.

Some bridges that have been built in recent years *span* very

wide rivers and estuaries.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. Hovercraft: strangest means of transport this century.
   2. 1953, Christopher Cockerell put idea to Government.
   3. Solution to problem of ship's loss of power and speed.
   4. Create vehicle (between boat and aircraft) on cushion of air.
   5. Vehicle rises out of water, rides on cushion.
   6. Tests proved—effective on water and land.

B. The hovercraft is perhaps the strangest means of transport developed this century. In 1953, Christopher Cockerell put an idea to the British Government. The idea, Cockerell's solution to the problem of a ship's loss of power and speed due to wave resistance, was to support a craft on a cushion of air, so that it was something in between a boat and an aircraft. The vehicle rose out of the water and rode on a cushion of air, and tests proved that it could travel over water and land. (89 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Modern means of transport.]

The twentieth century has seen greater developments in forms of transport than at any other time in the history of this planet. Because of modern methods of transport, the world has become a smaller place and people can now travel from one place to another almost anywhere in the world with speed and in comfort.

For many people in the world, the best way to travel long

distances is by air. Air travel by jet aeroplane is no longer a luxury. Even helicopters, once almost exclusively used by the armed services, are now being used more and more commercially, especially for short internal flights. And we can look forward to rocket travel in the next century—or flying in a craft like the space shuttle that will circumnavigate the earth almost in minutes.

For those who travel by sea, too, there has been progress. Ocean liners are popular, especially for luxury holidays, but so too are the hydrofoil and the hovercraft for use over comparatively short distances.

On land, we can now travel by car, by coach or by train. The building of motorway networks has meant that we can get to our destination by car or coach much faster than we have ever done. And the development of electric trains and new railway networks has also improved rail travel in many countries. (Will these, and motorway networks, become redundant with the development of new forms of transport?)

Sadly, of all the modern means of transport, the car is creating the most problems as it is causing serious congestion in cities. No satisfactory solution to this problem has yet been found, although, if the car is replaced by a different form of personal transport, perhaps the problem will simply go away.

(291 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. Many international exhibitions have been held, the most recent (one) *being in Tokyo*.

2. New York is full of skyscrapers, the tallest (one) *being*

the World Trade Centre.

B. See text.

C. 1. among   2. between   3. between   4. between

D. 1. *A great deal of* the information she gave me is incorrect.

   2. She knows *a great many* famous people.

   3. He's flown *a good many* times, but never really enjoyed it.

   4. She has had *a good few* different jobs in the past ten years.

E. 1. I made him *write a short letter of apology.*

   2. The teacher made the class *do their homework again.*

   3. He trained the team by making them *repeat the performance dozens of times.*

F. 1. She *might well find* the accounts course too difficult.

   2. The teacher *may well be* quite angry with a number of the students.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. An *engineer* is 'a person who is professionally trained to plan the making of machines, roads, bridges, electrical equipment, etc.': *an electrical engineer, a mechanical engineer, an electronics engineer. One day that young man will be an excellent civil engineer.*

   A *mechanic*, on the other hand, is 'a person who is skilled in using, repairing, etc. machinery': *That man employs a mechanic to look after the cars and lorries.*

   2. A *solution* is 'an answer to a difficulty or problem': *There are no simple solutions to the unemployment*

problem.

A *solvent* is 'a liquid able to turn a solid substance into liquid': *Alcohol and petrol are useful solvents for grease stains that will not come off in water*.

B. 1. *turned to* = begun to do (as a change from his previous profession)

2. *turn off* = stop the flow of water by screwing the tap tight

3. *turned up* = arrived (at our house)

4. *turned about* = turned right around

C. 1. The very first time I tried to *ride a horse*, I fell off.

2. Now that Andy's got a new bike, we can all *go for a ride* together.

3. If you're driving into town, can you *give me a ride*?

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 8～10 行"His answer was to lift the vessel out of the water by making it ride on a cushion of air...(他的解决办法是把船体提离水面，让船在一个气垫上行驶……)"，得知气垫船是靠气压提离水面的，因此选项(c)air pressure(气压)为正确项。选项(a)electronics(电子)、选项(b)rings(圆环)和选项(d)a curtain(幕布)都不是使船体提离水面的手段。

2. (c)

根据课文第 3～4 行"an idea on which he had been

方式，不足以说明气垫船原理会如此令人兴奋。选项(b)is good for communications(有益于交通)和选项(c)has been applied to cross the Atlantic(已被用于横穿大西洋)都只是气垫船原理在某一方面的应用，故均为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

课文中使用的 ever since 表示“自那以后”，而选项(d)From that time 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)As a result(结果)、选项(b)Because of this(由于这个)和选项(c)Up till then(直到那时)都与 ever since 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

6. (c)

课文中使用的是动词 have 的现在完成时形式，表示“已经经历过”，而选项(c)experienced(经历)所表达的意思与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)obtained(获得)、选项(b)possessed(拥有)和选项(d)enjoyed(享受)所表达的意思都与 have 不同，故均为错误项。

7. (c)

课文中使用的是名词 answer，在这里 answer 并不是“回答”的意思，而是解决波浪阻力的“办法”或“方式”，因此选项(c)way(办法)为正确项。选项(a)direction(方向，指南)、选项(b)how(如何)和选项(d)idea(想法)都与 answer 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

8. (a)

本题考查定语从句用法。课文中使用的是“介词 over + 关系代词 which”。介词可以用在关系代词前，也可以用在关系代词所引导的从句之后。用在前面较为正式。所以选项(a)it rides over 为正确项，其中省略了关系代词

that。选项(b)riding over it 为分词短语。当分词短语作定语时，其逻辑主语应该是所修饰的名词，但该句中 surface 并不是它的逻辑主语，其逻辑主语应该是气垫船，所以为错误项。选项(c)it rides 中缺少介词 over。选项(d)which it rides 中缺少介词 over。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的名词 solution 意即“解决办法”，而选项(d)answer to 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)solvent for(有偿还债务能力的)、选项(b)explanation of(对……的解释)和选项(c)result of(……的结果)所表达的意思都其意思不同，因此均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的 on the bottom of 意即“在……底部”，而选项(a)under(在……下部)与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(b)at the depth of (在……深度)、选项(c)deeper than (比……深)和选项(d)at the basis of(在……的基础上)都不是其意思不符，故均为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的动词 mount 意即“登上”，而选项(b)climbed up 与其同义，因此为正确项。(a)hit(碰击)、选项(c)crashed into(撞上)和选项(d)met(遇到)都与其意思不符，故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的形容词 various 表示“各种各样的”，而选项(c)different(不同的，各种各样的)与其表达的意思相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)many(许多)、选项(b)unusual (不寻常的)和选项(d)developed(改进的)都与其意思不同，故均为错误项。

Lesson 30
Exploring the sea-floor
海底勘探

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. He means that we were simply aware of the distances forwards and sideways (that is, as far as we can see), not the third dimension, the depth of the sea.
2. The sentence which begins: 'The open sea was deep...'
3. Immediately between the continental slope and the true ocean floor lies a long 'tailing-off' of material transported out to deep water after being eroded from the continents.

词汇练习参考答案

Shallow channels and surface rocks are just two of the *hazards of navigation* in this small harbour.

They are *dredging* the harbour channels to make them deeper.

In order to make underwater exploration easier, it might soon be possible to build *submarine* research stations.

It is thought that the crater was formed by a meteorite of *considerable magnitude* hitting the earth at some time in the distant past.

If you're going walking or climbing in the mountains, a *relief* map is absolutely essential.

Compared with the size of our planet, the earth's *crust* is really not very thick.

The artist painted a country scene first in oils and then *superimposed* on it a photo negative of a woman's face.

The effect was quite surprising.

The northern face of the mountain is so steep that it is almost *vertical*.

The performance was finally over with the sound of applause *tailing off* as the actors left the stage.

Many of the stones are so *eroded* that it is impossible to read the hieroglyphs carved on them.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. 100 years ago people assumed seabed flat.

2. Sounding of 2,400 fathoms obtained 1839.

3. 1869, deep soundings obtained from H.M.S. *Porcupine*.

4. Legitimate study of sea-bed established by *Challenger* expedition.

5. Parts of ocean 2-3 miles deep, with large underwater features.

6. Now we have relief map of Atlantic.

7. Sea-bed is basic crust of earth, with continents above.

B. A hundred years ago people simply assumed the sea-bed was flat. A sounding of 2,400 fathoms was obtained in 1839, but it wasn't until 1869 that deep soundings were obtained in the Atlantic by the Royal Society from H.M.S. *Porcupine* and samples of the sea-bed were collected. The legitimate study of the sea-bed was established shortly after that by the H.M.S. *Challenger* expedition, which

observed that parts of the ocean were 2-3 miles deep and that there were large underwater features. Today we have a relief map of the Atlantic and know about the topography of the sea-bed. We can regard the sea-bed as the basic crust of the earth, with continents standing nearly three miles above the floor. (119 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Man has done relatively little to exploit the wealth of the sea.]

The twentieth century has seen greater progress in many fields than in any other period in history. While we have certainly exploited a lot of land, we have still not explored all the land above sea level, however, so it is not surprising that very little of the sea-bed has been explored. Indeed, the intensive study of the sea and the sea-bed is comparatively recent. And since the sea accounts for a very large percentage of the earth's surface, perhaps we should be spending much more time and money on studying it in detail.

The sea itself is a tremendous source of power. We have only just begun harnessing the tides to provide electricity, but the energy is there just waiting to be used. The tides and waves contain vast amounts of energy which we must be able to use.

The sea is a source of food, too, of course. Men have taken fish from the sea for thousands of years, but it is only now that plankton is being seen as a source of protein to feed the growing world population. And the whole idea of 'cultivating' the sea-bed is actively being investigated.

As a source of wealth, the sea has already begun to be

exploited, but only in the past few years. We can now obtain minerals from the sea, and take fossil fuels from it, as in the North Sea, where oil and gas are both being extracted from under the sea.

Following the pioneer work of the French underwater explorer and marine bilogist, Jacques Cousteau, perhaps the time will come when we will set up permanent villages under the sea, or even towns and cities that people can live in. If that ever happens, we will certainly be using the sea to its greatest potential. (302 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. I didn't understand what had happened until I read the report in the newspaper. /It was not until I read the report in the newspaper that I understood what had happened.

2. The plane will not take off again until the engine has been checked.

3. Tom didn't get home until four o'clock this morning.

4. I shan't return this book to the library until I have read it.

5. It wasn't until I had paid for the goods that the man agreed to deliver them.

C. 1. *Since* the sun's shining, I think I'll go for a walk.

2. We've been waiting for them *since* six o'clock, and they still haven't arrived.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The adjective *flat* means 'smooth and level, not rounded or lumpy': *This beach is flat, but not level.*
   Level, on the other hand, means 'flat and not tilted': *A football or rugby field must be level. Take a level teaspoonful of sugar.*

2. The noun *disposal* means 'the act of getting rid of something, removal': *They have called in a team of bomb disposal men.* However, it is also used in the expression 'at someone's disposal' to mean 'able to be used freely by someone': *Our car is at your disposal for the time you are here.*
   Disposition means 'a particular tendency of character, behaviour, etc.': *The woman has always had a cheerful disposition.*

3. The adjective *worthy* means 'deserving', as in: *It was a performance worthy to be remembered.*
   Valuable, on the other hand, means 'worth a lot of money': *I am sure that this is an extremely valuable painting.*

4. The verb *confirm* means 'give support or certainty to a fact, belief, statement, etc., e.g. by providing more proof or by stating that something is true or correct': *The new evidence confirmed our opinion that both men were lying.*
   The verb *assure* means 'tell firmly and with confidence, with the aim of removing doubt': *She assured us that everything possible was being done for our father.* (Note that the verb is used in the patterns

assure someone of something, *assure someone that*...)

5. Care must be taken with the pronunciation of these two adjectives: *rugged* /ˈrʌgɪd/ and *ragged* /ˈrægɪd/. *Rugged* means 'having a rough uneven surface' and usually refers to land: *After crossing the plain, we eventually reached a range of rugged hills.*
   Ragged means 'old and torn': *The man wore a ragged shirt.*

B. 1. The little boat headed out into *the open sea* and was soon lost to view in the large waves.
   2. Because the weather was so beautiful, we decided to have the party in *the open air*, not indoors.

C. 1. *Mathematics* was my worst subject at school.
   2. Here is *the news*.
   3. *Physics* is a science concerned with natural forces such as light, heat, movement, and so on.
   4. *Billiards* is not a game that I enjoy much.

D. 1. The police and the ambulance arrived *shortly after* the accident happened.
   2. *Shortly before* we were due to leave, we received a telephone call warning us not to go.
   3. I know I'm already a little late, but I'll be there *shortly*.

E. 1. *features* (ll.9-11) = typical or noticeable parts
   2. *feature* (films) = full-length cinema (films) with an invented story and professional actors
   3. *is featured* = is included as a major story
   4. *features* = parts of the face

F. 1. It is thought that about *1 in 10* of the population will

have problems with their eyesight before they are 50.

2. The chances of your having an accident between home and school are about *1 in 1,000*.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 9～11 行"A burst of activity associated with the laying of submarine cables soon confirmed the *Challenger's* observation that many parts of the ocean were two to three miles deep, and the existence of underwater features of considerable magnitude(铺设海底电缆的热潮很快证实了'挑战者'号的观察结果:海洋中很多地方可深达两三英里,水下特征差异极大)",得知在上百年前人们并不知道海底差异如此巨大,所以选项(c)irregular(不平坦的)为正确项。过去人们认为海洋是二维平面形的,所以选项(a)two dimensional(二维的)为错误项。人们早就知道靠近陆地浅水区的深浅不一能给航行带来危险,所以选项(b)a hazard for navigation(航行危险)为错误项。过去的人们一直认为海底是平坦的,所以选项(d)flat(平坦的)为错误项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 7～9 行"Shortly after this the famous H.M.S. *Challenger* expedition established the study of the sea-floor as a subject worthy of the most qualified physicists and geologists(此后不久,英国著名的'挑战者'号舰艇对海底的那次考察,把对海床的研究确立为一个

starts at a place somewhere near the 100-fathom mark and in the course of a few hundred miles reaches the true ocean floor at 2,500-3,500 fathoms(大陆架慢坡一般是从差不多 100 英寻水深的地方开始的,一直延伸到几百英里远深达 2,500 至 3,500 英寻的地方,那里才是真正的海底)",得知选项(d)gradually stretches out to the sea bed (逐渐地延伸到海底)为正确项。大陆架慢坡从水深约 100 英寻的地方开始,而不是直接从海岸开始,所以选项(a)starts immediately at the sea shore(直接从海岸开始)为错误项。大陆架慢坡既包括陡峭的峭壁,又包括缓和的阶梯地带,所以选项(b)consists entirely of steep, probably vertical cliffs(包括的都是陡峭的乃至垂直的峭壁)为错误项。大陆架慢坡始于 100 英寻水深的地方,而不是止于 100 英寻水深的地方,因此选项(c)ends at the 100-fathom mark(终止在 100 英寻水深的地方)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

课文中使用的是 not until 的结构,表示"直到……才",选项(d)in 和句子中的 only 可以表示 not until 的意思,故为正确项。表示在某一年不能用介词 on 或 at,因此选项(a)on 和选项(b)at 均为错误项。选项(c)until 前应该用否定词 not。

6. (b)

课文中使用的是"形容词 worthy + of",表示"值得",选项(b)worth 为介词,后跟动词的-ing 形式,表示"做某事值得",故为正确项。选项(a)worthy 后面应跟介词 of。由于句子中已经有了谓语动词 became,这里 worth doing 为定语,修饰 subject,所以不应有系动词 is, 故选项(c)is

worth 为错误项。选项(d)worths 之所以错误，是因为 worth 不能当动词使用。

7. (c)

课文中使用的名词词组 the laying of submarine cables 表示"海底电缆的铺设"，该题中使用的是动词 lay(铺，铺设)的被动语态，该动词的过去分词形式为 laid，故选项(c)laid 为正确项。选项(a)lying 为动词 lie(躺，卧)的现在分词，该句表达的是"电缆被铺设"而不是"电缆横卧"，因此为错误项。选项(b)lain 为动词 lie 的过去分词，该形式很少用到。选项(d)lied 为动词 lie(撒谎)的过去式和过去分词。

8. (c)

课文中使用的是 quite reasonable(完全有理由)。当 enough 作副词修饰形容词或副词时，应置于所修饰的词之后，如：It's big enough.(它足够大。)The student isn't trying hard enough.(那个学生不够努力。)因此选项(c)reasonable enough(完全有理由)为正确项。选项(a)less reasonable(理由不充分)与原文意思不符，因此为错误项。选项(b)enough reasonable 因 enough 只能置于其所修饰词形容词之后所以为错误项。选项(d)so reasonable 中的副词 so 可以用来修饰形容词，表示强调，如：I was so busy.(我太忙了。)但是用于该句中与 quite 所表达的程度不同，因此为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

课文中使用的介词短语是 at the disposal of(由……使用)，选项(a)use 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(b)loan(借贷)、选项(c)rental(租借)和选项(d)exploration(探险)都与 at the disposal of 所表达的意思不同，故均为错

误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的过去分词短语 associated with 意即“与……有关的”，而 connected with 与其同义，故选项(c)connected(有关的)为正确项。选项(a)coupled(连接的)、选项(b)communicated(交流的)和选项(d)reckoned(考虑，认为)都与 associated 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

11. (d)

课文中使用的名词是 features(特性)，而选项(d)characteristics 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)studies(研究)、选项(b)observations(观察)和选项(c)characters(角色)均与 features 表达的意思不符，故为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的是 being eroded(被侵蚀)，而短语动词选项(c)worn away 表达的意思与其相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)worn down(磨损)、选项(b)worn through(磨穿)和选项(d)worn out(磨损)都与 being eroded 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

Lesson 31
The sculptor speaks
雕塑家的语言

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. When the author says that many people are 'form-blind', he means that they cannot appreciate three-dimensional form.
2. This means that the person looking at a sculpture has to appreciate shapes as shapes, not as reproductions or representation of real things — objects, creatures, fruit, vegetables and so on.

词汇练习参考答案

A hologram is a representation of something *in three dimensions*—or at least it looks like it: it has height, width, and seems to have depth.

Many games and sports *involve* two or more people playing against each other.

A football fan *distinguishes* the different teams by the colours they wear.

Their garden is *roughly* six metres by ten.

Even though some artists are still very young, *they may attain considerable accuracy in the perception* of shape and form.

We should all *strive* to make this world a better place.

I have never understood how that artist *visualizes* the things she paints.

The three possible *combinations* of two letters chosen from A, B, C are AB, BC and AC.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. Sculpture — most difficult of arts: demands ability to respond to form in three dimensions.

2. Children distinguish things in two dimensions.

3. Later they develop ability to judge things in three dimensions.

4. Most people achieve appreciation of flat form: rarely appreciate three-dimensional form.

5. Sculptor does this: form in full spatial completeness — sees sculpture from all sides.

B. Sculpture is probably the most difficult of all arts because it demands an ability to respond to form in three dimensions. Children learn to distinguish things in two dimensions, only later developing the ability to judge things in three dimensions. Most people achieve considerable accuracy in appreciating flat form, but rarely make the necessary effort to appreciate full three-dimensional form. This, however, is what the sculptor does: he thinks of and uses form in its full spatial completeness, and can see, in his mind, the three-dimensional sculpture from all sides.

(90 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[The arts cannot be enjoyed unless one has specialized knowledge of them.]

To say that one cannot enjoy the arts without possessing specialized knowledge is a little like saying that one cannot enjoy driving a sports car without understanding exactly what goes on under the bonnet, or enjoy playing a computer game without understanding how it has been programmed. Large numbers of people enjoy listening to music, reading novels and poetry, watching stage plays and admiring pictures or sculpture without knowing anything at all about the technical difficulties involved in creating works of art.

It has been pointed out that there is a difference between 'appreciation' and 'enjoyment': in order to appreciate fully a work of art, one probably needs to have a great deal of specialized knowledge, one needs to have some insight into the creative process; on the other hand, in order simply to enjoy a work of art, no such knowledge is necessary. Nevertheless, it should not be forgotten that a certain amount of specialized knowledge can certainly increase one's enjoyment since a trained mind knows what to look for.

On the other hand, of course, specialized knowledge can have a negative effect: it can diminish a listener's, reader's or viewer's enjoyment since it may make that person hypercritical and interfere with a natural response.

Artists, sculptors, composers, poets, novelists and playwrights rarely create works of art only for those who have specialized knowledge. Most of them create their art in order to communicate with large numbers of people, not just an elite

group, or even their own fellow artists. If it were necessary to possess specialized knowledge to enjoy the arts, and all artists created just for them, then only those people directly involved in the arts would be able to enjoy them — and that is clearly untrue. (290 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. *Having asked her* to call me, I've decided not to call her.

2. *Having reached* a certain level in English, many students give up.

3. *Having read* his letter three times, I decided not to answer it.

C. See text.

D. 1. He acted as if *he were the manager*. (Note: He wasn't the manager!)

2. He talked as if *he had a plum in his mouth*. (Note: He didn't have a plum in his mouth!)

3. It looked as if *it were snowing outside*. (Note: It might have looked like it, but it wasn't snowing!)

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The noun *appreciation* means 'the understanding of the good qualities or worth of something': *The audience showed their appreciation by applauding for a full five minutes.*

An *estimation* is 'an approximate calculation, judgment, esteem or opinion': *In my estimation, he is*

one of the best young sculptors we have.

2. The verb *distinguish*, as used in the text, means 'see, hear, or notice as being separate or distinct, recognize clearly': *Can you distinguish the different buildings at such a distance?*

   The verb *perceive* means '(come to) have knowledge of something through one of the senses or through the mind, become conscious of or understand': *The more they got to know each other, the more he perceived a change in her attitude towards him.*

3. *Depth* is the noun associated with the adjective *deep*, and is 'the state or degree of being deep': *They dived to a depth of twenty fathoms before they found parts of the wreck.*

   The deep is a poetic word for the sea and can also be used in the plural 'the deeps' to mean the deep parts of the oceans: *Although we still know relatively little about the deeps, we know a lot more than we did fifty years ago.*

4. The verb *displace* means 'force out of the usual place': *He displaced a bone in his knee while playing football.* *Replace*, on the other hand, means 'change (one person or thing) for another, often better, newer, etc.': *We've just replaced all our old computers with new ones.*

5. The adjective *single* refers to something as 'being the only one (of a possible number)': *A single tree offered shade from the sun.*

   Unique, however, refers to something that is 'the only

one of its type' : *This glass goblet is unique: it was the only one ever produced to commemorate the 21st birthday of that famous writer.*

B. 1. *forms* = shapes, outward appearances

2. *formed* = brought into existence, established

3. *form* = (school) class

4. *form* = degree of fitness or skill

5. *forms* = (wooden) benches

6. *form* = official paper or questionnaire

C. 1. ...he knows while he looks at one side what the other side *is like*. = He can 'see' the appearance of the other side...

2. What *is* your new school *like*? = Is your new school big, small, interesting, enjoyable, etc.?

3. What *was* the weather *like* yesterday? = Was it dry, wet, cold, etc.?

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 1～3 行"Appreciation of sculpture depends upon the ability to respond to form in three dimensions. That is perhaps why sculpture has been described as the most difficult of all arts; certainly it is more difficult than the arts which involve appreciation of flat forms, shape in only two dimensions(对雕塑的鉴赏力取决于对立体的反应能力。雕塑被说成是所有艺术中最难的艺术，可能就

3. (b)

根据课文第 2 段的描述，特别是第 12～13 行“He mentally visualizes a complex form *from all round* itself...(他的大脑能从物体周围的各个角度勾画出其复杂的形象……)”，可以判断选项(b)think of his sculpture viewed from every angle(从各个角度想像出他的雕塑的形象)为正确项。课文中使用虚拟语气描述物体在雕塑家的头脑里是一个立体的形象，就好像将这个物体握在他的手心一样。实际上雕塑家不可能将所有的雕塑握在他的手心，因为有的雕塑非常大，所以选项(a)hold his sculpture in the hollow of his hand(将他的雕塑握在手心)是错误项。文中讲述雕塑家将他自己同物体的重心、质量、重量融为一体，而不是同他的雕塑融为一体，故选项(c)identify himself with his sculpture(将他自己同他的雕塑融为一体)为错误项。课文中说雕塑家头脑中形成的是物体的立体形象，而不是脑子里总是想着他的雕塑，因此选项(d)carry his sculpture inside his head(脑子里总是想着他的雕塑)为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文第 15～16 行“And the sensitive observer of sculpture must also learn to feel shape simply as shape, not as description or reminiscence(因此、敏锐的雕塑观赏者也必须学会把形体作为形体来感觉，不要靠描述和印象去感觉)”，得知形体欣赏对雕塑家是至关重要的，因此选项(a)form(形体)为正确项。选项(b)ideas behind(隐含的观念)、选项(c)meaning(意义)和选项(d)description(描述)对雕塑家都不重要。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

课文中使用的 many more 表示"多得多"。在英语中 more 可以由某些数量词修饰,后跟复数名词,如 some more chips(再来些炸土豆片)。这些数量词是 some、any、a couple、dozens、hundreds、a few、hardly any、a lot、lots、many、no 等。由此可知选项(d)A lot 与 many 同义,且可用于修饰 more,因此为正确项,而其他 3 个选项都不能用于修饰 more,故均为错误项。

6. (b)

课文中使用的分词短语 having satisfied the requirements of practical necessity 作时间状语,该题中使用的是时间状语从句,选项(b)when it has satisfied 虽然句子结构不同,但所表达的意思相同。选项(a)to satisfy 为动词不定式,动词不定式不能作时间状语,故该项为错误项。选项(c)it has satisfied 和选项(d)having to satisfy 都不能作时间状语,故均为错误项。

7. (a)

课文中使用的是引导时间状语的连词 while,表示动作同时发生。课文中的句子和该题的句子结构都是将时间状语从句置于主句的中间。选项(a)as 与 while 相同,可以引导表示动作同时发生的时间状语从句,因此为正确项。选项(b)that 不能单独引导时间状语从句。选项(c)since (自从)可以引导时间状语从句,但不能用来表示动作同时发生。选项(d)during(在……期间)为介词,不能单独用来引导时间状语从句。

8. (d)

课文中使用的是用来列举某类事物的 such as, 介词 like 也可以用来列举某类事物,如:You only get them in big

countries, like Africa or India.(你只能在诸如非洲或印度这样的大国才能得到它们。)因此选项(d)like 为正确项。选项(a)like to shells 中的 to 是多余的。选项(b)as shells 中的 as 不能单独用来列举事物。选项(c)such as shell 中的 shell 为可数名词,或者用复数,或者加上不定冠词 a。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的短语动词 respond to 意即"对……反应",选项(d)react to 与 respond to 同义,如:I wondered how he'd react to such a blunt question.(我想知道他对这样一个率直的问题该有何种反应。)所以该项为正确项。选项(a)surrender to(屈服于)、选项(b)reply to(答复)和选项(c)answer(回答)都与 respond to 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的动词 distinguish 为"分辨"之义,该题应该使用短语动词 make out 表达原义。make out 的意思之一是"分辨",如:It's sometime difficult to make out what is said over an airport loudspeaker.(有时很难听清楚机场广播说什么。)因此选项(c)out 为正确项。其他 3 个选项与 make 搭配之后,make away 的后面再跟 with 时意思是"偷走"、"拿走",make off 的意思是"即刻逃走",make of (常用被动态)的意思是"由……制成"。

11. (b)

课文中使用的形容词 further 表示"进一步的"、"另外的",而选项(b)additional 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)exceptional(例外的)和选项(c)more(更)所表达的意思与 further 不同,因此为错误项。选项(d)farther 和 further 都可以用来谈论距离,如:Edinburgh is farther/

further away than York.(爱丁堡比约克远。)但是只有 further 能表示 additional 的意思，如：For further information, see the handbook.(进一步的信息请看说明书。)所以该项为错误项。

12. (d)

课文中使用的名词 reminiscence 意即"回忆"、"回忆的事情"，而选项(d)something remembered(记住的事情)也就是对过去事情的记忆和回忆，因此该项为正确项。选项(a)souvenir(纪念品)、选项(b)remembrance(纪念品)和选项(c)memorial(纪念物，纪念碑)所表达的意思都不同于 reminiscence。

Lesson 32
Galileo reborn
伽利略的复生

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The old view of Galileo was of a man who drew conclusions about nature and the laws of physics from experiments, while the modern view of Galileo is more sophisticated.
2. He justifies Galileo's contemporaries' failure to see what he saw because his views and methods were so revolutionary that his contemporaries could not appreciate them.

词汇练习参考答案

Lie detector tests have been the subject of quite *violent controversy* over the years.

They are both very determined women, so there is rather a *clash* of personalities.

When you are very young, it is sometimes difficult to see events in their *proper perspective*.

Martin Luther King was a man who *despised the prejudices* of racist American politicians.

We all experienced the same *consciousness* of danger when we entered the room.

The information I have read this week has *profoundly*

modified my opinion of the man.

Do you think that for once you could consider the *consequences* of your actions?

That new invention quite clearly has *potentialities* for either good or evil.

Because the soldier left his post and wandered away for a short time, he was accused of *culpable* negligence.

He showed me a weird-looking *contrivance* designed to shear sheep.

We laughed when we looked at ourselves in those strange wavy mirrors that *distort* everything.

摘要练习参考答案

A. 1. Closer study has modified old view of the man.

2. New picture of man has emerged.

3. Sympathy for opponents has grown.

4. Remembered for telescopic observations.

5. Can hardly blame those who could not see: they did not have experience.

6. Perhaps also forgive those—thought discoveries products of distortion of curved glass.

B. A closer study of Galileo and his life has modified the old view of the man and his work. A new, more sophisticated picture of the man has emerged and our sympathy for his opponents has grown. Of course he is remembered for his telescopic observations, but we can hardly blame those who could not see what he saw: they did not have his experience with the apparatus. And we should perhaps also forgive those who thought that his

discoveries were the products of the distortion of curved glass. (89 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[New ideas can never be readily accepted by those who cling to old beliefs. Argue in favour of this statement.]

It always takes time for any new idea to be accepted by people in general, often longer for it to be accepted by those who insist on clinging to old beliefs. (There are still a few people even now, for example, who believe that the world is flat.) New ideas have always been, and will always be, resisted for a number of reasons. Some people express the concern that what is new may not necessarily be better, while others reject a new idea from pure prejudice or from a simple fear of the unknown. In the past, the views of Aristotle and Ptolemy lasted for centuries before they were replaced by other ideas.

Many new ideas which are resisted when they first make their appearance are gradually assimilated until they finally become commonplace. In the twentieth century alone, the whole concept of manned flight took many years to be accepted. And in the past, the observation by Copernicus that the earth goes round the sun (and not the sun round the earth), the views of Galileo, Kepler's ideas on planetary motions, Darwin's idea of evolution and Freud's ideas on psychology all took time to be accepted—and even now there are those who argue against the ideas put forward by Darwin and Freud.

There are, however, exceptions to the fact that new ideas

are not readily accepted. Some great ideas have been accepted almost without question from the time they made their appearance; as examples, Newton's ideas on gravitation were acclaimed in the 18th century just as Einstein's ideas on relativity were acclaimed in the twentieth. Perhaps twenty-first century man will be much more open to new ideas, but there will always be those who cling to their old beliefs and will never be convinced by new ideas. (298 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

C. Both the *to*-infinitive and the *-ing* form (gerund) can be used as the subject of a sentence, especially when the main verb of the sentence is *be*: *To err is human, to forgive divine. Finding work is difficult these days.* We often begin sentences with an *-ing* form (gerund), but not so frequently with a *to*-infinitive.

To build houses with the local stone was difficult.

(Note: This would sound better as 'It was difficult to build houses with the local stone'.)

Reading is one of the most important skills a young child must master.

To eat meat with your fingers is considered bad-mannered in that country.

Smoking is completely forbidden in many restaurants in Britain now.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The two nouns *plane* and *plain* are pronounced in exactly the same way: /pleɪn/.

As used in the text, the noun *plane* is a technical term (in geometry) meaning a completely flat surface: *If a rectangle is drawn at 90° to another rectangular plane, it can create an optical illusion.*

A *plain* is 'a large stretch of flat land': *They rode across the plain towards the distant mountains.*

2. The adjective *popular* means 'liked by many people': *Disneyworld is a popular holiday destination for many British people.*

The adjective *folk* refers to 'music or any other art that has grown up among working or country people as an important part of their way of life and that belongs to a particular area, trade, etc.': *I know a girl who wants to become a folk singer.*

3. *Sympathy* is 'sensitivity to and understanding of the sufferings of other people, often expressed in a willingness to give help': *The president sent a message of sympathy to the victims of the earthquake.*

Affection is 'a gentle lasting love, like that of a parent for a child': *She still has deep affection for some of her old school friends.*

4. The verb *blame* means 'consider (someone or something) responsible for (something bad)': *She blamed me for her exam results—as if I had anything to do with it!*

The verb *accuse* means 'charge someone with doing

reached a small hut on the side of the hill.

6. The book gets exciting at this point; just *read on*.

D. 1. *calls for* = requires, needs

2. *call on* = pay a short visit to

3. *call you up* = telephone you

4. *call* ... *off* = cancel

5. *call for* = collect

6. *call in* (a doctor) = ask (a doctor) to visit

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第2段的陈述,得知伽利略是第一个用望远镜观察天空的人,他所观察到的论据足以把亚里士多德和托勒密的观点一起推翻,这就意味着在他之前没有人质询过他们的理论和学说,人们都信奉他们的学说。由此可以判断选项(b)believed what they read in Aristotle and Ptolemy(信奉他们从亚里士多德和托勒密的书中所读到的东西)为正确项。选项(a)did exactly as they were told because of their fear of the Inquisition(由于惧怕宗教法庭而完全俯首听命)与文章所述意义不符,因此为错误项。文中明确地说是伽利略第一个用望远镜观察天空,因此选项(c)made observations about the universe by using telescopes(用望远镜观察宇宙)显然是错误的。选项(d)depended on the evidence of their eyes to understand the universe(靠肉眼看到的东西理解宇宙)在文中并未提到,故为错误项。

2. (d)

课文的第2段谈到了伽利略所取得的成就，过去人们就是透过这些成就来看待伽利略的，所以对他的看法并不复杂，而是单一的。因此说选项(d) we considered his achievements from only one point of view(我们只是根据一种观点来看待他的成就)为正确项。选项(a) he was the first to turn a telescope to the sky(他是第一个将望远镜转向天空的人)只是他取得观察结果的手段，而不是他的成就，因此该项为错误项。选项(b) he put his questions to nature instead of to the ancients(他向自然界而不是向古人提出问题)，也只是他得出新的结论的前提，故也不是人们对他的看法不复杂的原因。选项(c) he performed various experiments with weights and balls(他用重物和球进行了多次实验)是他用来验证自由落体定律的实验，因此该项为错误项。

3. (c)

根据课文第3段的描述，特别是第14～15行"At the same time our sympathy for Galileo's opponents has grown somewhat(与此同时，我们对伽利略的反对派的同情也有所增加)"，得知随着人们对那个时代的深入了解，人们感觉到昔日对伽利略的反对派过于苛刻了。因此可以判断选项(c) were over-critical of his opponents(对他的反对派过于吹毛求疵了)为正确项。选项(a) overrated Galileo's achievements(过高估计了伽利略的成就)、选项(b) underrated Galileo's achievements(过低估计了伽利略的成就)和选项(d) agreed with his opponents(同意他的反对派的看法)都与课文所述意义不符，因此均为错误项。

4. (b)

本题考查概括能力。根据课文第3段的描述，可以得出

如下结论，即伽利略时代的光学仪器是非常落后和原始的，所以选项(b)rather primitive(相当原始的)为正确项。伽利略时代的观察仪器很落后，所以选项(a)sufficiently developed to enhance our view of the sky(先进程度足以提高我们对天空的观察程度)为错误项。选项(c)full of scratches left by glass grinders(满都是磨镜工留下的磨痕)并非事实，而是当时有人将观察到的螺旋状星云说成是磨痕，故该项为错误项。选项(d)created to produce not truth but illusion(不是为了产生真相而是为了产生幻影)是指伽利略以前的那些曲面镜的作用，而不是伽利略时代的光学仪器，所以该项为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (a)

该题考查时态和时间状语的一致性。课文中使用的是现在完成时。该句用的是一般过去时，所以时间状语应该为选项(a)a long time ago(很久以前)，ago 表示"之前"，如 seven months ago(一个月之前)、five years ago(5 年前)。选项(b)since a long time 的用法是错误的，首先，介词 since 后面不应跟随表示一段时间的词，而必须是表示某一特定时间的词，如 since 1959(从 1959 年)、since last January(从 1 月份以来)。其次，since 引导的时间状语只能用于完成时，而不用于一般过去时。选项(c)for a long time still 中的副词 still 是多余的。选项(d)a long time yet 中 yet 与 ago 不能互换，yet 用于此处是错误的。

6. (d)

该题考查句子的时态。该句是对过去事情的简单陈述，故应该用一般过去时，所以选项(d)was not 为正确项，而其他 3 个选项的时态都不正确。

7. (b)

该题考查句子的时态。句子中的时间状语表示的是过去的某个时间之前，主句动作应发生在过去的过去，故应该用过去完成时，所以选项(b)had turned 为正确项，而其他3个选项的时态都不正确。

8. (d)

本题主要考查定语从句的用法。定语从句一般由关系代词 who、which、that 等引导，其前应该有名词作先行词。关系代词 who 指人，which 指物，that 既指人又指物。选项(d)the things that 为正确项。选项(a)that 为关系代词，但是其前没有先行词，故为错误项。选项(b)the which 中不应有定冠词 the，而且缺少先行词，因此为错误项。选项(c)which 中缺少先行词，因此也为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

课文中使用的名词 clash 表示"冲突"，而选项(c)conflict 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)crash(坠毁)、选项(b)contrast(对比)和选项(d)opposition(反对)都与 clash 的词义不符，故均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的动词 despise 表示"蔑视"，而选项(a)had a low opinion of 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(b)condemned(谴责)、选项(c)accepted(接受)和选项(d)denied(否定)都与 despise 的词义不符，故均为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的动词 modify 表示"改变"、"变更"，而选项(b)altered 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)confirm(证实)、选项(c)increased (提高)和选项(d)sharpened(加剧)

都与 modify 的词义不符，故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的形容词 popular 意为“通俗的”、“普及的”、“流行的”，而选项(c)widely read and admired writings(被广泛阅读并受到尊敬的作品)是对 popular 一词的解释，因此为正确项。选项(a)writings by different people(不同人所写的作品)、选项(b)writings of the people(人民的作品)和选项(d)folk tales(民间传说)都与 popular 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

Lesson 33
Education
教育

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Education can be said to be an 'investment' since the state (or people) in the future will be able to use the skills educated people have been taught.
2. The author appears to be opposed to formal education because it ignores our spiritual side.
3. According to the author, a primitive society is superior to a civilized society because it gives every one of its members an equal start.

词汇练习参考答案

The Foreign Secretary was a *key* figure in the negotiations about the borders.

Adverse circumstances forced the family to sell their large home and buy a small flat.

Young people today are a lot more *enlightened* than they were even fifty years ago.

He's still weighing up the *potential* benefits and disadvantages of investing in the company.

Certain modern education systems *lay less stress* on exam

results than many did years ago.

Once the four people sign this contract, the conditions in it are *binding* on all of them.

Illiterates are people who have not learned to read and write, and who are regarded as badly educated.

In Britain, as in most other countries, Income Tax is *compulsory* for people who work and earn money.

Has that young man got the (*monetary*) *means* to support a family? (Note: In a sentence like this, the word *means* already implies 'monetary', so the word 'monetary' is redundant.)

Is everyone *entitled* to an Old Age Pension in this country?

Damage to property, graffiti and other acts of vandalism are often the result of *juvenile delinquency*.

摘要练习参考答案

Without formal education and without books, our spiritual outlook would be different and we could lay more stress on memory, applied psychology and love for our fellow-citizens than on the acquisition of factual information. Among tribal people all traditionally acquired knowledge is shared among all and there is a situation in which all have an 'equal start'. The introduction of compulsory school attendance has been fairly recent in European countries, which tends to suggest that compulsory education might be slightly unnatural. In a primitive society, all receive an education at their own pace and under the attention of parents. (99 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[A man without an education, many of us believe, is an unfortunate victim of adverse circumstances deprived of one of the greatest twentieth-century opportunities. Discuss.]

A. 1. Modern society—based on a system of formal education.

2. Compulsory education (from e.g. 5-16)—gives opportunities to all.

3. Pupils / Students need to learn basic skills—reading, writing, maths—and now computer skills.

4. Other 'subjects'—art, music, dance, sport, etc.—give further opportunities for enjoyment and careers.

5. Careers now not always for life: people already change profession 2 or 3 times.

6. Basic education essential for people to undertake retraining for new professions.

B. Modern society in many countries is based on a system of formal education whereby young people expect to spend the first part of their lives in education before entering the world of work for the rest of it. There are very few places in the world where education is not now compulsory, usually from about the age of five to about the age of fifteen or sixteen, and beyond that, of course, is the world of higher education—colleges and universities. The concept of compulsory schooling is to provide a whole population with basic education, and anyone that misses this education will almost certainly be at a disadvantage later in life.

Pupils in Infant Schools and Junior Schools (as schools in primary education are called in Britain) need to learn basic literacy skills: they must learn to read and write. They also need to begin to learn basic mathematics, or

arithmetic. And they need to acquire social skills in order to get on with each other in our everyday lives. And further, young children nowadays are also beginning to acquire basic computer skills.

Pupils in secondary schools continue to build on the education that they have acquired early on, and broaden their interests and abilities in art, music, dance, sports and so on. Indeed, these 'subjects' give many pupils further opportunities for careers as well as for enjoyment both in school and in later life. Again, anyone who misses these opportunities misses a great deal.

There was a time not very long ago when a young man needed no more education than what his father needed in order to carry on the same profession. And young women, of course, apparently needed no education at all. In the second half of the twentieth century, education was vital since it opened the doors of opportunity to a wide variety of professions for both young men and women—and many entered a profession *for life*. Now, however, a profession or a career is not always for life; indeed, young people are already finding that they have to or want to change profession after a few years. In fact, with the introduction of new industrial practices and more and more computerisation, some professions are beginning to disappear. In the face of this social movement, then, basic education is more and more essential for people to be able to undertake retraining for new professions. Anyone who does not have a basic education is at a distinct disadvantage.

(413 *words*)

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The words *opportunity* and *chance* are very close in meaning and use in English.

An *opportunity* is 'a favourable moment or occasion (for doing something)': *You should go and see that film if you get the opportunity. I took the opportunity of visiting Ann while I was in London.*

Chance can also mean 'a time suitable for doing something you want to do': *I'll have a chance/an opportunity to go up the Eiffel Tower when I'm in Paris.*

However, only the word *chance* can be used to talk about possibility alone: *There is a chance (= possibility) that I'll see him later in the week.*

2. The adjectives *potential* and *potent*, while they might look similar, are totally different in meaning.

Potential refers to something 'that may happen or become so, although not actually existing at present': *An ordinary kitchen is full of potential dangers, especially for young children.*

Potent, on the other hand, means 'very effective, convincing, or having great power': *She put forward a very potent argument for our moving house.*

3. Although both connected with the verb 'imagine', the adjectives *imaginable* and *imaginative* are very different in use. (A third adjective, *imaginary*, refers to something 'only existing in imagination': *Quite a lot of small children have imaginary friends.*)

Imaginable refers to something 'that can be imagined':

They tried every imaginable means/every means imaginable, but they couldn't wake her up.

Imaginative refers to something 'that shows use of the imagination': *One of the students came up with an extremely imaginative design for the new college.*

4. A *tribe* is 'a social group of people made up of people of the same race, beliefs, customs, language, etc., living in a particular area often under the leadership of a chief': *Not long ago an English woman married a member of the Zulu tribe and brought him back to Britain.*

   The word *race*, on the other hand, refers to 'the largest social group of humans, a group of the same colour and/or physical type': *The law forbids discrimination on the grounds of race or religion.*

5. Both adjective *compulsory* and *necessary* are connected to the idea of obligation.

   Compulsory refers to something 'which must be done by law, by order, etc.': *Wearing a car seat belt is compulsory in Britain. Is it compulsory in China?*

   Necessary refers to something 'that must be had, obtained or done': *Is it really necessary for all of us to go to the meeting?*

B. 1. *outlook* = general point of view

   2. *outburst* = sudden powerful expression of feeling

   3. *outbreak* = sudden appearance or beginning of something bad

   4. *outcome* = an effect or result

C. 1. *All* knowledge... *is* shared by *all*. = The whole

amount of knowledge (that exists)... is shared by everyone.

2. *All are* entitled to an equal start. = All people are... = Everyone is...

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 3～4 行"Convinced of the importance of education, modern states 'invest' in institutions of learning to get back 'interest' in the form of a large group of enlightened young men and women who are potential leaders(现代国家深深懂得教育的重要性,对教育机构投资,收回的'利息'便是培养出大批有知识的男女青年,这些人可能会成为未来的栋梁)",得知现代国家之所以投资教育是希望获得回报,即人才的回报,因此选项(b)reap a reward(获得回报)为正确项。选项(a)repay(偿还)、选项(c)charge interest(索要利息)和选项(d)make an investment(进行投资)都与课文所述意义不符,故均为错误项。

2. (d)

根据课文第 11～12 行"Among tribal people all knowledge inherited by tradition is shared by all; it is taught to every member of the tribe so that in this respect everybody is equally equipped for life(在部落中,通过传统继承的知识为所有人共享,并传授给部落中的每一个成员。从这个意义上讲,人人受到的有关生活本领的教育是相等的)",

得知对于部落时期的人们来说最重要的是学会如何共同生存下去，因此选项(d)to learn how to live together(学会如何共同生存)为正确项。部落时期的人们所看重的并不是他们的精神面貌，故选项(a)their spiritual outlook(他们的精神面貌)为错误项。部落时期的人们只为生存而努力，并不知道何为民主，故选项(b)democracy(民主)为错误项。选项(c)to live without books(没有书本也可生活)并不是部落时期的人们所看重的东西，所以为错误项。

3．(b)

根据课文第3段的讲述，得知正规的义务教育在现代国家中实施得很晚，甚至直到现在还有所谓文明国家尚未实施义务教育，由此得知现代社会的正规的学校教育起步很晚，因此选项(b)is relatively recent(是近期的事)为正确项。课文中明确地说到“平等起步”，即没有文盲是现代教育试图恢复的理想状况，但并没有保证做到没有文盲，因此选项(a)makes sure there are no illiterates(保证没有文盲)为错误项。现代教育的理想目标是让人人能接受同样的教育，所以选项(c)is enjoyed by a ‘happy few’(只有“幸运的极个别人”能得到)为错误项。选项(d)gives everyone an equal start(给每一个人平等的起步)只是现代教育的理想目标，而尚未实现，因此该项为错误项。

4．(a)

根据课文第20～21行“There is none of the hurry which, in our society, often hampers the full development of a growing personality(那里没有我们今天社会中的匆忙生活，而匆忙的生活常常妨碍个性的全面发展)”，得知现代社会匆忙的生活妨碍个性的全面发展，而在原始社会中

不匆忙，由此推断出原始社会中孩子们可以自主地全面发展个性，因此选项(a)children have time to develop at their own pace(孩子们有时间自主地发展)为正确项。在原始社会中，父亲们不必为支付教育费用而发愁，所以选项(b)fathers can't afford to buy an education for their children(父亲们不能够支付孩子们的教育)为错误项。文中只是谈到丛林和荒凉地区不知道什么是"青少年犯罪"，而未说它们是知识的源泉，故选项(c)the jungles and savannahs are the source of knowledge(丛林和大草原是知识的源泉)为错误项。在原始社会，孩子们每时每刻都在父母的关心下成长，因此选项(d)parents don't pay much attention to their children(父母亲不关心他们的孩子们)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

课文中使用的是过去分词短语 convinced of。过去分词可以引导一个短语，作状语，表示被动语态，being convinced of 与 convinced of 所表达的意思相同，只是一个以过去分词引导，一个以现在分词 being 引导，故选项(d)Being convinced 为正确项。选项(a)Being convincing 在结构和语义上讲不通：现在分词 convincing 表示"令人信服的"，表示"使……坚信"时需要用被动语态，故该项为错误项。选项(b)Convincing 为现在分词，不能用来表达被动语态，因此为错误项。选项(c)Having convinced 中缺少 been，所以构不成被动语态，故也为错误项。

6. (a)

课文中的原句是"...—what would civilization be like without its benefits?"(第 6 行)疑问副词 how 本身就可以表示疑问代词 what...like 所表示的意思，因此选项

(a)How为正确项。选项(b)Where、选项(c)Why 和选项(d)Which 所表达的意思都与原句意义不符,故均为错误项。

7. (c)

课文中使用的是连接结果状语从句的连词 so that,选项(c)Consequently 所表达意思是"结果",与 so that 所起的作用相同,故为正确项。选项(a)Because 表示原因,而不是结果,因此为错误项。选项(b)In fact(事实上)用于阐述一个事实,而不是结果,为错误项。选项(d)However(然而)表示转折,而不是结果,为错误项。

8. (c)

课文中使用的是表示存在的 there be 结构。动词 exist 表示"存在",因此选项(c)exist 为正确项。选项(a)grow(发展)、选项(b)believe(相信)和选项(d)are 都不能表达"存在"的含义,故均为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的名词 circumstances 表示"状况",该词与名词 conditions 同义,故选项(d)conditions 为正确项。选项(a)cases(情形)与 circumstances 所表达的意思不符,因此为错误项。选项(b)states 可以表示"状态",但需用单数。选项(c)situations 表示"形势",与 circumstances 所表达的意思不符,因此也为错误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的名词 memory 表示"记忆",而选项(c)recall 可以作名词,表示"记忆",故该项为正确项。选项(a)souvenirs(纪念品)、选项(b)memorization(记性)和选项(d)remembrance(纪念)都不是此意思,故均为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的形容词 imaginable 表示“可以想像得出的”,选项(b)imagined 用于被动语态形式的定语从句中表达了相同的意思,因此为正确项。选项(a)imaginative(富于想像的)、选项(c)imaginary(虚构的)和选项(d)fantasized(幻想出的)都与 imaginable 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的形容词 compulsory 表示“义务的“,而选项(a)obligatory 与 compulsory 同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)compelling(强迫的)、选项(c)compulsive(强迫性的)和选项(d)commanding(支配的)都与 compulsory 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

Lesson 34
Adolescence
青春期

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The author characterizes as 'childish' the behaviour that parents exhibit when they accuse their children of disloyalty or make spiteful remarks about their children's friends' parents.
2. According to the author, it is inevitable that adolescents should become disillusioned with their parents because their ideal parents can't stand up to realistic evaluation.
3. Our attitude towards adolescents differs from that of the Victorians in that they treated their children with an 'unreasoning authoritarian attitude' while we 'tend to go to the other extreme'.

词汇练习参考答案

When he described me as a 'part-time artist', I regarded it as a *slur* on my profession.

She is an unpleasant person who often makes *spiteful remarks* about her neighbours.

The accident made me *resolve* to be a lot more careful in future.

Many young people suffer a certain amount of *disillusionment* when they have been in their first job for a while.

The tragic end to the whole story was *to some degree inevitable*.

We are waiting for a full *evaluation* before we can go ahead with the project.

I was deeply *touched* to receive the present you sent.

Catholics are required to believe in the *infallibility* of the Pope.

While *resenting* the need to obtain their permission, I realized that it was necessary.

The man faced three *charges* of burglary and one of receiving stolen property.

Many teachers in the past have been accused of *retreating behind an unreasoning authoritarian attitude*.

摘要练习参考答案

When children praise their friends' homes, parents are often upset and might show that they are annoyed by accusing the children of disloyalty. This behaviour makes children decide not to talk to their parents about things in future, which in turn makes the parents complain about their children's secretiveness. Thus disillusionment with parents is inevitable. Children have a high opinion of their parents which can hardly stand up to realistic evaluation. If parents realized how high this opinion was, and if they understood adolescence, they would not be so hurt by adolescent reactions. (93 *words*)

from all over the world. Communications and transport are such now that most of us can go out today and buy a newspaper published in a country halfway across the world only yesterday.

In many homes and schools, PCs are more than machines; they are part of the furniture. Pupils learn from them, they play games on them, and they communicate through them. For many children, 'pen and ink' letters to 'penfriends' in other countries are being replaced by notes and letters on the Internet. Many have parents who understand the new technology; all have (or had) grandparents for whom PCs are 'magic boxes'. And it is this generation gap, this technology gap, which makes us see why children grow up more quickly.

Children nowadays, however, also seem to have a more adult attitude to human relationships, especially those between the sexes. Is this the result of more enlightened education in schools and in the media, or is it the result of greater exposure to films, adult literature, and so on? If this is true, is it good that children 'grow up' more quickly now in this respect?

Growing up should involve acquiring a sense of responsibility and it does seem that young people in general nowadays have a greater sense of responsibility than people of the same age a few years ago. Is this a good thing? Who knows? In later life they may regret that they were not allowed to remain children longer. (412 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. (Often) parents are (often) upset when their children (often) praise the homes of their friends.

2. Such a loss of dignity and descent into childish behaviour on the part of the adults (deeply) shocks the adolescents (deeply).

3. They (seldom) realize that they have brought this on themselves.

4. (Usually) parents would (usually) be (greatly) surprised and (deeply) touched if they realized how much belief their children (usually) have in their character and infallibility.

B. 1. He's old *enough* to go on holiday on his own.

2. Have you got *enough* money for your bus fare?

C. 1. They let us *use their bicycles for the weekend*.

2. We made them *wait for us*.

3. Will you let him *borrow your tennis racket?*

4. Why make me *address those letters when you could do them yourself?*

D. See text.

E. 1. *What* I most wanted to ask him was how he felt when his team won the championship.

2. *What* annoys me about him is the way he always knows the answers to questions in class.

3. *What* the girl wanted most for her birthday was a new computer.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. When used with an adjective, the word *enough* means

'to the necessary degree': *She is old enough to know her own mind.*

The adverb *fairly*, on the other hand, means 'to some degree, rather, quite': *It was a fairly difficult exercise, but I managed to finish it.*

2. The noun *loss* /lɒs/ comes from the verb *lose* /luːz/—and notice the difference in pronunciation.

   Did you report the loss of the painting to the police?

   When did you lose your wallet?

3. Notice first how these words are pronounced: *descent* /dɪˈsent/ and *decent* /ˈdiːsənt/.

   The noun *descent* comes from *descend* and means 'the process of going down': *We watched the girl's descent from the tree.* It is also sometimes used figuratively, as in the text, and as here: *His friends watched his descent into a life of crime, not knowing what to do about it.*

   The adjective *decent* means 'proper, socially acceptable': *Our neighbours are all very decent people.*

4. The noun *belief*, as used in the text, means 'a feeling that someone or something is good or can be depended on, trust or confidence': *The failure of the operation has shaken my belief in doctors.*

   Loyalty is 'the feeling or quality of being loyal, faithful to friends, principles, country, etc.': *No one could ever doubt her loyalty to the team and her team-mates.*

5. *Grow up* and *grow* can easily be confused.

   Grow up means 'develop from being a child to being a

man or woman': *What do you want to be when you grow up ?*

The verb *grow* means 'increase in size by natural development': *She doesn't like her hair short, so she's letting it grow.* (The verb can also be used transitively: *We grow all our own vegetables.*)

6. The verb *hurt* means 'cause physical pain and/or damage to': *She hurt her leg when she fell*; or 'cause a person to suffer pain of the mind': *I was deeply hurt by the way she just ignored me.*

   The noun *pain*, however, means 'suffering, great discomfort of the body or mind': *His behaviour caused his parents a great deal of pain.*

7. The noun *refusal* (from the verb *refuse*) means '(the expression of) an unwillingness to accept': *My offer of help met with a polite refusal.* (= ... was politely refused.)

   The noun *denial* (from the verb *deny*) means 'the act or an example of saying that something is not true': *The government has issued a strong denial of this rumour.*

B. 1. It was a mistake *on the part of* Jones (= Jones was mistaken) to sign the contract without reading it.

2. The firm agreed to refund one customer his money, and *before very long* hundreds of others were asking for refunds.

3. Most children learn quite early in life that they have *to stand up to* people who try to bully them.

4. The boy was accused of stealing a book from the shop,

but he had done *nothing of the kind*.

5. '*On the whole*,' said the teacher, 'I'm very pleased with John's progress.'
6. In the end we all have *to face up to* our responsibilities.
7. I'm rather busy *at the moment*, but I promise I'll do it later.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

课文第 1 段谈到,家长听到自己的孩子赞扬自己朋友的家时表现出不快,甚至责备孩子,这些消极反常的表现最终导致孩子们不愿意同家长们交流,因此可以认定选项(d)in response to negative behavior from their parents(对他们父母亲消极举止的回应)为正确项。选项(a)when parents feel their children are criticizing their cooking(当父母亲觉得他们的孩子们在批评他们所做的饭菜时)只是家长的感觉,这种感觉不会直接导致孩子们拒绝交流。正是因为孩子们想让家长允许自己赞扬朋友的家才会使自己的父母不快,所以选项(b)because they don't want to talk about the places or people they visit(因为他们不想谈论他们去过的地方或拜访的人们)为错误项。父母的表现令孩子们不想再与他们交流,原本孩子们讲述朋友家的事也并不想惹父母不高兴,所以选项(c)because they don't want to annoy their parents(因为他们不想令父母亲不高兴)为错误项。

2．(c)

根据课文第13～14行“and realized that it was a sign that the child was growing up(并且意识到这象征着孩子们正在成熟)”,得知孩子们对家长幻想的破灭表示孩子们正在走向成熟，因此选项(c) it's often a sign they're developing into maturity(经常是他们走向成熟的象征)为正确项。孩子们对家长幻想的破灭是正常的，因此选项(a)they don't really mean it(他们实际上并不是这个意思)为错误项。选项(b)they want to hurt them(他们想令他们难受)并不是他们对父母幻想破灭的缘由。选项(d)they are expressing their dissatisfaction with them(他们在表达对父母的不满)也并不是孩子们对父母幻想破灭的目的。

3．(a)

根据课文第16～17行“The adolescent, with his passion for sincerity, always respects a parent who admits that he is wrong, or ignorant, or even that he has been unfair or unjust(青少年酷爱真诚，对于能够承认错误或无知甚至承认自己做得不公平或不公正的父母，他们总是尊敬的)”,得知选项(a) show more respect for parents who don't think they're always right(对那些认为自己并不总是正确的父母更为尊敬)为正确项。选项(b)resent and resist parents whatever the parents do(无论父母做什么都怨恨并反抗父母)并不是青少年惯常的表现，因此为错误项。选项(c)respect their parents' infallibility(尊敬他们父母的一贯正确)与课文所述意义恰好相反，因此为错误项。选项(d)treat their parents unfairly and unjustly(对待他们的父母既不公平又不公正)也并非孩子们的所为，因此为错误项。

4. (c)

根据课文第 19～21 行"Victorian parents believed that they kept their dignity by retreating behind an unreasoning authoritarian attitude; in fact they did nothing of the kind, but children were then too cowed to let them know how they really felt(维多利亚时代的父母认为，他们可以靠无理的权威气派来维护自己的尊严，实际上那是根本不行的。孩子们只不过被吓得不敢让父母知道自己的想法罢了)"，得知维多利亚时代的孩子们惧怕父母的权威而不敢表露出真实情感，因此选项(c)were too afraid to show their true feelings(过于害怕而不敢表露真实情感)为正确项。其他 3 项都不符合题意，故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (b)

课文中使用的 foolish enough to 表示"愚蠢地"，选项(b)so...as to(如此……以至于……)用于该句中表示"如此愚蠢以至于……"，与课文中的原句所表达的意思相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)so...that 虽然也表示"如此……以至于……"的意思，但是 that 后面应该跟从句而不能跟动词不定式，所以为错误项。副词 so 修饰形容词或副词，其后不能跟动词不定式，而应跟状语从句，因此选项(c)so...to 为错误项。选项(d)such...to 中的 such 不能修饰形容词，因此也为错误项。

6. (d)

课文中使用的是复数名词 friends 的所有格形式 friends'，该句中应使用介词 of 构成的介词短语，作定语修饰 parents，故名词 friends 就不需用所有格了，因此选项(d)friends为正确项。选项(a)friend 为单数名词，应该是复数，故为错误项。由于已经有了 of 构成的介词短语表

示所属关系，所以名词就不应再用所有格了，因此选项(b)friends'为错误项。选项(c)friend's既是单数，又是所有格，因此为错误项。

7. (a)

课文中使用的动词tell通常可如文中那样直接将表示人的宾语置于其后，而在动词say后面一般直接跟直接宾语，而不直接跟表示人的宾语，如果需跟表示人的宾语则应用介词to，如：He said to her that he was ready.(他对她说他准备好了。)因此选项(a)says为正确项。选项(b)tells后可以跟双宾语，但如果间接宾语为人称代词则应将间接宾语放在前面而直接宾语放在后面，如：She told him the news.(她将这个消息告诉了他。)在该句中，应该将该代词直接置于动词tell的后面，所以该项为错误项。选项(c)talks为"讲话"的意思，不是"告诉"的意思，且不能用talk sth. to sb.结构，故为错误项。选项(d)speaks的意思是"说"、"讲"，不能表示"告诉某人某事"，因此也为错误项。

8. (c)

课文中是从正面阐述孩子们对父母总是估计过高，除非父母自身不令人满意。该句是以条件句的形式表示"如果父母自身不令人满意，孩子们就不会对他们估计过高"，因此选项(c)If为正确项。该句中的主句为否定句，如果从句用until连接，语义就不同了，故选项(a)Until为错误项。选项(b)As long不能作为连词引导定语从句。选项(d)Though用于该句中语义讲不通，故为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的动词resolve意即"下决心"、"决定"，而选项(d)decide与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)deny(否

认)、选项(b)refuse(拒绝)和选项(c)explain(解释)都与resolve所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的是形容词 good 和 adequate,而选项(b)satisfactory(令人满意的)一个词就可代替前两个词,因此为正确项。选项(a)outstanding(杰出的)、选项(c)promising(有前途的)和选项(d)enough(足够的)都与good 和 adequate 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

11. (c)

课文中使用的名词 evaluation 表示"评价",而选项(c)assessment 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)valuation(估价)、选项(b)estimate(估计)和选项(d)estimation(判断)都与 evaluation 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的动词 admit 表示"承认",而选项(a)confesses与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)confides(吐露)、选项(c)explains(解释)和选项(d)excepts(免除)都与 admit 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

A *comparable* car would be considerably cheaper abroad.

Most *terrestrial* plants require sunshine, oxygen and water in order to survive.

There has been a *significant* change in the attitude of ordinary people towards the Royal family since the death of Diana.

This is the only place I have visited that is anything *like* my home village.

When Europeans first set foot on American soil, the continent was quite clearly *ideal for settlement*.

摘要练习参考答案

The Moon could become the industrial hub of the solar system and supply spaceships. As the Moon has only one eightieth of the Earth's mass, it needs 97 per cent less energy to travel from the Moon to the Earth than to get from the Earth's surface into orbit. To escape the Earth's gravity, you must travel at seven miles per second; to escape from the Moon is 1.5 miles per second. Because of the low gravity on the Moon, it will need far less energy to reach that speed.

(90 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[The future of space travel.]

A. 1. What might space travel be like in 50 years' time?
   2. Moon base?
   3. Orbiting space stations?
   4. Long voyages to Mars and other planets?
   5. Day trips round the Earth from orbiting space station or even from shuttle?

B. Looking back, it seems almost incredible that man only began to fly in mechanical flying machines about a hundred years ago. Since the first experimental flights in small, frail, home-made aircraft, the science has developed to a point where millions regularly fly around the earth in large jet-propelled aircraft which will carry hundreds of people. But not only has man flown around the Earth, in the Earth's atmosphere, he has taken the first steps towards travel in space. Men have walked on the Moon, and men have set up space stations and hundreds of satellites in orbit around the Earth.

If this incredible development has taken place in such a short time, what might space travel be like in fifty years' time? It is almost impossible to say. Even at this moment (early in 1999), the Americans and Russians are co-operating in the construction of the largest space station in the Earth's orbit. From there, and once it is operating properly, who knows what the future might hold? It will act as the launch pad for flights to other planets, and then the Moon must surely be the site for the first human colony in space.

Men have always been pioneers and for many years space has been regarded as 'the last frontier'. Escaping the Earth's gravity was the first challenge, setting up orbiting space stations the next, and colonising the Moon will be the next. But after that? Surely we must aim for Mars, the 'Red Planet', the planet which we are told is most like ours in so many ways. After that, other planets beckon in our own Solar System, and then beyond that, millions of light

years away, are thousands and thousands of other worlds.

But let's just 'come back down to the Earth' again for a moment. For many people, the next fifty years could well bring the Ultimate Holiday. How would you like to travel round the earth in an orbiting space station or even in a shuttle in a few hours? If you can afford it, you will almost certainly be able to in a few years' time. The question is: Will you want to? Or would you rather leave the Earth completely, become a space pioneer and emigrate to a different planet? (380 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. It *feels* very hot today.

2. This chocolate *seems/tastes* very bitter.

3. You can see from her face that she *doesn't feel* well. (She *looks* unwell.)

4. The price *sounds/seems* about right, but I hope they can offer us a bigger discount.

5. How much did you say? That *sounds/seems* expensive!

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The adjectives *industrial* and *industrious* are both derived from the noun *industry*, but are completely different in meaning.

Industrial means 'of industry and the people who work in it': *Germany has always been one of the major industrial nations in Europe.*

Industrious means 'hard-working': *If you have ever*

watched a colony of ants, you will realize how industrious they are.

2. The verb *supply* means 'provide things to a person for use': *He has been supplying our restaurant with vegetables for years.*

   The verb *provide* means 'cause or arrange for someone to have or use': *The course is free but you have to provide your own books.*

3. The adverb *less*, with adjectives and adverbs, means 'not so, not as, to a smaller degree': *I hope the next train will be less crowded than this one.*

   The word *lesser* can be used as an adjective or an adverb and means 'not so great or so much as the other (of two) in worth, degree, size, etc.': *This is the lesser of two evils.*

4. The regular verb *bound* means 'move along quickly by jumping or leaping movements': *The dogs bounded across the field after the deer.*

   The plural noun *bounds* means 'the furthest limits or edges of something, the limits beyond which it is impossible or undesirable to go': *His greed for power knows no bounds.*

5. The irregular verb *bind* (*bound — bound*) means 'tie together, especially with rope': *The robbers bound the bank manager's hands together.*

   The adjective phrase *bound for* means 'going to or intending to go to': *We boarded a plane that was bound for New York.*

6. The irregular verb *fly* (*flew—flown*) means 'control and guide (an aircraft) in flight': *I'd love to learn to fly a helicopter.*

The regular verb *flow* (*flowed — flowed*) means 'move smoothly in a stream': *The river flowed right behind the back door of the farmhouse.*

7. An *idea* is 'a plan, thought, or suggestion for a possible course of action': *Has anyone got a good idea where to go this afternoon?*

An *ideal* is 'a perfect example': *That's my ideal of what a country cottage should be like.*

8. *At least* is an expression used for mentioning a small advantage that makes its disadvantage(s) seem not so bad: *The food wasn't good, but at least it was cheap.*

At last means 'in the end, after a long time': *At last we found out what had really happened.*

B. 1. The Moon *could* become...

2. This *might* sound...

3. It takes *far* less energy...

C. 1. which 2. which 3. which 4. who 5. who

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第1段的描述,得知由于月球的质量只是地球的1/80,因此从月球发射火箭所需的能量大大地少于从地球上发射,节约了能量也就节约了费用,所以月球有可

能成为太阳系的工业中心，故选项(c)it will be cheaper and easier to launch rockets from there(从那儿发射火箭既便宜又容易)为正确项。选项(a)it has only an eightieth of the Earth's mass(它的质量只是地球的1/80)并不是成为太阳系工业中心的原因。选项(b)it will be an industrial centre(它将成为工业中心)也并不是成为太阳系工业中心的原因。首先，月球的燃料不是存在于月球表面而是在岩石中，此外燃料的存在也并不是使其成为太阳系工业中心的主要原因，因此选项(d)there is plenty of fuel available on its surface(它的表面有大量的燃料)为错误项。

2. (b)

根据课文第5～6行"To escape from the Earth in a rocket, one must travel at seven miles per second. The comparable speed from the Moon is only 1.5 miles per second(要乘坐一枚火箭飞离地球，火箭的速度需达到每秒7英里，而从月球出发相应速度只是每秒1.5英里)"，得知选项(b)at far less speed(以慢得多的速度)为正确项。选项(a)much faster(快得多)与课文所述意义恰恰相反。选项(c)seven miles per second(每秒7英里的速度)为从地球出发的速度，而不是从月球出发的速度。月球表面的重力仅是地球表面的1/6，而不是从月球出发的速度，故选项(d)one sixth of the speed(那个速度的1/6)为错误项。

3. (c)

根据课文第15～16行"The idea of colonising Mars—a world 160 times more distant than the Moon—will move decisively from the second phase to the third, when a significant number of people are living permanently in

space(如果有相当数量的人永久性地住在太空，征服火星的计划——一个比月球远160倍的星球——就可以明确地从第2阶段进入第3阶段)"，得知征服火星计划的设想取决于在太空永久居住的人口数量，因此选项(c)quite a few people have permanently left the earth(相当多的人已经永久地离开地球)为正确项。选项(a)there are enough enthusiasts to volunteer(有足够热衷者志愿参加)并不是启动该项计划的理由。第3阶段就是设想阶段，所以选项(b)we have passed three phases(我们已经通过了3个阶段)为错误项。选项(d)we are prepared to travel 160 times further than the Moon(我们准备好飞行到比月球远160倍的距离)并不是设想该计划的前提。

4. (a)

根据课文第19行"It is the one world in the Solar System that is most like the Earth(它是太阳系里与地球最接近的一颗行星)"，得知火星之所以是理想的居住之所是因为它与地球最为相像。所以选项(a)it is the planet that most closely resembles the earth(它是与地球最相似的行星)为正确项。选项(b)many senior scientists are in favour of it(许多资深科学家对它情有独钟)并不是火星是理想居住之所的原因。选项(c)it is a world full of red sandy deserts(它是一个到处都是红色沙漠的星球)也并不是人类可以居住的条件，因此为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

课文中用动词不定式 To escape from the Earth 作目的状语。选项(c)If you want to 为条件状语从句，所表达的意思与动词不定式 to escape 所表达的意思相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)For to 中不应有介词 for。选项(b)In

order 中缺少 to，正确的应该是用 in order to 引导一目的状语。选项(d)For 为介词，后面不能直接跟动词原形。

6．(a)

本题考查作先行主语的 it 的用法。该句中动词不定式 to accelerate 1.5 miles per second 为主语，先行词 it 作为形式主语代替该动词不定式，所以选项(a)does it take 为正确项。该句是疑问句，句子结构应该是疑问句语序，因此选项(b)it takes 为错误项。选项(c)takes 中缺少构成疑问句的助动词 does，也缺少先行主语 it。选项(d)takes it 中缺少助动词 does。

7．(b)

课文中使用的是连接副词 when 引导的时间状语从句，表达"直到……才"，选项(b)Not until 为正确项。not until 用来引导时间状语从句，表示"直到……才"，常用于句首，此时主句的词序应该倒装，如：Not until that evening was she able to recover her self-control.（直到那个夜晚，她才能够得以重新自控。）该句中的主句词序倒装，故句首必须是否定词，因此选项(a)Until 为错误项。选项(c)Unless相当于 if...not。首先，从句用 unless 时主句应该用否定形式才能表达原句的含义。此外，主句的词序也不应倒装。选项(d)Although用于该句中在语义和结构上都不正确。

8．(b)

该句表达"充满热情"，应该用选项(b)full of(充满)。选项(a) filled of 中的介词应该是 with 而不是 of。选项(c)full中缺少介词 of。选项(d)full with 中的介词应该是 of 而不是 with。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的形容词 fantastic 表示“令人难以置信”,选项(d)amazing(令人惊异的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)unlikely(不大可能的)、选项(b)imaginative(富于想像的)和选项(c)imaginary(想像的)都与 fantastic 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的形容词 similar 表示“同样的”,选项(c)like(同样的)作定语直接修饰名词,所表达的意思与 similar 相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)proximate(最接近的)、选项(b)the same(同一的)和选项(d)identical(同一的)都与 similar 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

11. (c)

课文中使用的 all along 表示“一直”,选项(c)all the time 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)a long time(很久)、选项(b)always(总是)和选项(d)forever(永远)都与 all along 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

12. (d)

课文中使用的是名词 voyagers(旅客),选项(d)travellers(旅客)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)flyers(飞行者)、选项(b)journeymen(熟练工人,计日工)和选项(c)trippers(游乐者)都与 voyagers 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

She said *precisely* what I was going to say.

There's no need for you to worry *unduly* about booking the theatre seats, I'll do that.

摘要练习参考答案

To stay in business, a business enterprise must incur costs and expenses, one of which is the cost of managing and administering the business, commonly called the administrative overheads. These can be compared to the cost of government in a nation. Administrative overheads can be kept low in a business by trusting employees to be responsible and to show initiative, without needing anyone to check on them. In the same way, the cost of government can be kept low if people behave loyally and responsibly. If they do not and the nation becomes disunited, however, the government will have to watch, check and control the people and will incur unduly high costs. (112 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Ideally, a civil service should consist of a permanently appointed body of men and women who are not necessarily affiliated to the political party that is in power at any particular time. Discuss.]

A. 1. A country needs a professional body of people to run it, regardless of political party in power.

2. Part of necessary administrative overheads—but no need for armies of civil servants.

3. These people must be trained for the job and be rigorously managed.

4. These people should serve any government in power loyally, regardless of personal political beliefs.

5. Compare systems where civil service consists of political appointments—open to bribery and corruption.

B. In *The Backward Society*, Raymond Frost compares managing and administering a nation with managing and administering a private business enterprise. Essentially, of course, the operations are the same: after all, even if they are on a totally different scale, each has necessary administrative overheads, and each must constantly review the situation to ensure that those overheads are kept as low as possible. The major difference between the two, however, apart from the size, is that the country's 'bosses' might change quite frequently.

Change can be disruptive, particularly when a nation elects a new government, so a country needs a professional body of people to run it, regardless of the political party which is in power. Like a private enterprise, the administration of a country needs stability. A civil service provides that permanence and stability. When things need changing, or when politicians pass laws to change things, it seems sensible that people who have been appointed to permanent positions should be allowed to implement those changes with as little disruption or direct political pressure as possible.

A civil service must be seen as part of the necessary administrative overheads. A country needs people to administer its finance, education, health service, police and public order, and so on. While the heads (or Ministers) of

those departments will change, the civil servants required to run these departments should be more or less permanent. There should be no need for armies of civil servants, however; the number of administrators must itself be carefully controlled, or administration can become its own aim.

In the same way that the numbers should be controlled, civil servants must be trained for the job and be rigorously managed. It has been argued, although it is debatable, that a clear career structure in the civil service helps not only to maintain the professionalism of those working in it but also to reduce the risk of corruption. The majority of civil servants will have their own political ideas, of course, but they should serve any government in power loyally, regardless of any such political beliefs.

In a system where the civil service contains many whose positions are primarily political appointments, where there is little or no career structure, and where there is little control over the increase in the numbers of civil servants, that system is open to bribery and corruption.

(390 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

C. See text.

D. 1. The book that *best illustrates* what I mean is *A Tale of Two Cities* by Charles Dickens.

2. 'Selfish' is the word that *best describes* my uncle: he

thinks of no one but himself.

3. The option that *best explains* what the sentence means is option 'A'.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. *Earnings* (plural noun) is the money which is earned by working: *What are your take-home earnings after tax and other deductions?*

Profits, on the other hand, is the money gained by a trade or business: *Last week the company announced their profits for last year.*

2. The verb *watch*, as used in the text, means 'be careful with or pay attention to': *You'd better watch Smith; I think he's a thief.*

The verb *follow* means 'move behind in the same direction': *The children followed the teacher out of the room.*

3. The verb *check* means 'test, examine, or mark to see if something is correct, true, in good condition, etc.': *Their bags were checked by security guards as they entered the building. She checked through the letter before sending it.*

The verb *control*, however, means 'have a directing influence over, have power over, rule': *Try to control yourself! The teacher just couldn't control his class. It is extremely difficult for more developing countries to control the growth of population.*

B. 1. *Backward* (in *a backward country*) is a derogatory term for 'developing', i. e. a poor country that is

trying to become richer and to improve the living conditions of its people.

2. *Backwards* (adverb) means 'in the opposite way to what is usual' or the opposite of 'forwards'.

3. *Backward* (in the phrase *backward children*) means 'behind in development'.

C. 1. 'We are concerned *only* with one kind of cost.'—The position of *only* here refers to 'one kind of cost'.

2. 'We *only* are concerned.'—The position of *only* here implies that only we, and no other people, are concerned.

3. 'We are concerned with *only* one kind of cost.'—This is the same as 1 above.

4. 'We are concerned with one kind of cost *only*.'—The position of *only* here emphasizes or stresses 'one kind of cost'.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第1段的描述,特别是第4行"Where the cost of government is high, resources for development are correspondingly low(凡是政府管理费用高的地方,用于发展国家经济的资金就会相应地减少)",得知选项(a)won't have much over for other expenditure(就没有更多的钱用于其他开支)为正确项。政府费用过高只能减少其他开支,而不会是国家仍然处于分裂之中,故选项

(b)will remain essentially disunited(会实际仍然处于分裂之中)为错误项。政府开支过高直接导致减少其他开支，并不会直接导致国家贫穷落后，因此选项(c)will become a poor and backward nation(会变成一个贫穷落后的国家)为错误项。政府开支过高会导致发展经费减少，所以不可能使国家高速发展，因此选项(d)will be able to develop rapidly(有可能快速发展)为错误项。

2．(c)

根据课文第6行"An enterprise has to incur certain costs and expenses in order to stay in business(一个企业为了继续经营，不得不支出一定的费用和开销)"，得知一个企业只有靠花钱才能继续经营，所以选项(c)by spending money(靠花钱)为正确项。选项(a)by relating to the cost of government in a nation(通过与某国家的政府开支建立联系)并不是企业得以继续经营的保证，因此为错误项。公司经营的好坏影响红利的分配，而不是红利的定期分配能保证企业的继续经营，故选项(b)if it distributes dividends on a regular basis(如果它定期分配红利)为错误项。选项(d)by assessing the cost of each job(通过评价每项工作的花费)也并非是维持企业经营的根本，所以为错误项。

3．(b)

根据课文第8～10行"The administrative overheads of a business are low to the extent that everyone working in the business can be trusted to behave in a way that best promotes the interests of the firm(如果企业中的每个人都在真诚地为提高企业利润而工作，那么企业的管理费用就会降低到相应的程度)"，得知选项(b)there is an atmosphere of trust in a company(公司中具有某种信任氛

围)是保证公司经营费用低的关键,因此该项为正确项。选项(a)business earnings remain high(公司收入保持高水平)并非能保证经营费用降低,所以为错误项。选项(c)people enjoy their jobs(人们以工作为乐)只能提高工作效率,不可能保证公司经营费用降低,所以为错误项。选项(d)there is a good system for checking all employees(有一个检查雇员的良好体系)只能增加而不能降低经营费用,故为错误项。

4. (c)

根据课文第19~21行"To the extent that the people can be relied upon to behave in a loyal and responsible manner, the government does not require armies of police and civil servants to keep them in order(如果人民忠于职守,能受到政府的信赖,那么政府就不需要大批的警察和公务员去促使人民遵纪守法)",得知政府开支的多少与人民的行为和可信赖程度有关,因此选项(c) is in direct proportion to the responsible behaviour of its citizens(与公民负责任的行为直接相关)为正确项。文中谈到需雇用大批的警察和公务员而非管理人员,因此选项(a)includes the employment of armies of administrators(包括雇用大批的管理人员)为错误项。文中之所以谈到经营公司就是要说明管理一个国家和管理一个公司是相同的,所以选项(b) cannot be compared in any way with running a business(与经营一个公司完全不可比)为错误项。只有在政府认为人民得不到信赖、没有责任感时才会增加警察和公务员,以加强对人民的监督、检查和控制,从而增加政府开支,而不是随意地增加,因此选项(d)always rises regardless of circumstances(总是不顾情况而提高)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

课文中使用的是 by comparing 短语，表示"通过与……进行比较"。该句为复合句，主句是 You can illustrate this，后面应该是由选项(c)if you 引导的条件状语从句。选项(a)though you 中的 though 引导让步状语从句，用于该句中语义不通。选项(b) would you 用于该处结构是错误的。动词 illiterate 后面不能跟动词不定式，故选项(d)to 为错误项。

6. (a)

课文中使用的是 be concerned(所关心的)，动词 concern 表示"关系到"，与其所表达的意思相同，如：Drug abuse concerns us all.(毒品侵害与我们人人相关。)故选项(a)concerns为正确项。选项(b)is concerned 的主语应该是人而不是物，故为错误项。动词 concern 不能用于进行时，故选项(c)is concerning 为错误项。concerning 为介词，意思是"关于"，所以选项(d)concerning 用于该句中是错误的。

7. (c)

课文中使用的 to the extent that 意即"到……程度"，选项(c)in so far as 中的 so far 可以表示"至……程度"，如：The road was built only so far before they ran out of money.(他们没钱了，这条路只能修到这个程度。)因此在该句中 in so far as 可以代替 to the extent that。选项(a)even if(即使)、选项(b)however much(无论多少)和选项(d)supposing(假设)所表达的意思都与 to the extent that 不同，故均为错误项。

8. (c)

课文中使用的是由 to the extent 引导的条件状语，表示

"只要",选项(c)As long as(只要)所表达的意思与其相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)Even if(即使)引导让步状语从句,而不是条件状语,因此为错误项。选项(b)However much(无论多少)在结构上和语义上都讲不通。选项(d)Supposing(假设)所表达的意思与 to the extent 不同,故为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的副词 correspondingly(相应地)与选项(d)proportionately所表达的意思相同。选项(a)together(同时)、选项(b)in response(作为对……回应)和选项(c)in writing(在书面上)都与 correspondingly 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的 administering 意即"管理",动词 conduct 具有"管理"的意思,因此选项(b)conducting 为正确项。选项(a)organising(组织)、选项(c)establishing(建立)和选项(d)developing(发展)都与 administering 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的动词 distribute 意即"分配",选项(a)share out 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)acquire(获得)、选项(c)dispose(配置)和选项(d)amass(聚敛)都与 distribute 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的副词 unduly 意即"过度地",选项(c)excessively 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)unacceptably(不可接受地)、选项(b)unexpectedly(未预料到地)和选项(d)extremely(极端地)都与 unduly 表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

The old man was already 85, but he was extremely *robust* and walked three or four kilometres every day.

It's *self-evident* that she won't pass the exam, so why are they letting her enter?

It is a *moot* point whether the Prime Minister's latest speech about the situation will really make much difference.

The swimmer was involved in a *fatal* accident: as he dived in, he hit the bottom, lost consciousness and drowned.

摘要练习参考答案

Not only have we assumed for years that the process of ageing is self-evident, we have also assumed that all other living things, animals, trees and so on 'wear out' in the same way. Mechanical systems also wear out, but they are different from us because they cannot repair themselves. Early in life, human bodies can repair themselves (except of course for fatal illnesses and accidents), but we gradually lose this power between the ages of twelve and eighty, so that a non-fatal illness at twelve can kill us at the age of eighty. (94 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Suggest reasons why we in the twentieth century can expect to live longer than people who lived in bygone times.]

A. 1. Few people in the past died of old age.
   2. Life is now easier and less barbaric.
   3. Most people now eat a better diet.
   4. Many people lead a more healthy life.
   5. In many countries, we have better health care.
   6. We have a better life style—heating and/or

air-conditioning in homes, vaccination against diseases that used to be fatal, etc.

7. *But* a) Nature — still dangerous: insects, reptiles, animals; earthquakes, floods, etc.;

   and b) we can't stop the process of ageing.

B. In the past it was quite unusual for a person to live a long life and die of old age in his own bed. People generally tended to die young, or at least well before they were middle-aged; they died of some terrible disease, in battle, of starvation, in childbirth — and many were executed for petty crimes (since death was the penalty for many crimes which we would not even regard as crimes now). People aged, of course, but it was not so noticeable as it is now, since that ageing process was cut short by sudden death in one form or another.

In many countries today life is much easier and far less barbaric than it was in, say, medieval England. People expect to, and indeed *do* live much longer. So, what are some of the reasons?

One very important reason is that many people now eat a much better, more varied diet than they used to; many eat a good balance of meat, fish, vegetables and dairy products, while others eat an equally good vegetarian diet. Perhaps the important thing is that people tend to *think* about what they eat, how much, and when.

At the same time, many lead a more healthy life. Whatever they do, and many lead a sedentary life at work, lots of people make an effort to exercise in order to keep fit and healthy. In many countries, of course — and this is

another very important reason why we live longer nowadays —we have better health care than we have ever had in the past. Years ago people died from illnesses and diseases which we can now cure and from accidents which would not now be fatal.

We enjoy a better lifestyle in many countries now too. Just to mention three things, we have central heating or air-conditioning in our homes, children are vaccinated against diseases that used to be fatal, and most of us work in much better conditions than our ancestors did. And just as important, of course, we know so much more about the way the human body works, what can go wrong, and how to cure it.

However, while we can expect to live longer than our ancestors, we must remember that there are two things we can still do nothing about. Nature is still dangerous and can kill. Not only are there dangerous insects, reptiles and animals which can kill humans, there are also natural disasters—earthquakes, storms, fire and floods—which still kill thousands of people every year and which we can do nothing about. And then, of course, there is the process of ageing which we cannot stop. (442 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. the 2 - 3 - 4. the 5 -

B. 1. *However* rich you may be, it doesn't mean that you will be happy.

2. Living in the country has a lot of advantages. There are also, *however*, quite a few disadvantages.

C. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The noun *infant* is a rather formal word, often used in official English, meaning 'a very young child, esp. one who has not yet learnt to speak or walk': *There is still an unacceptably high rate of infant mortality in that country.*

   Baby is the commonest word to describe 'a very young child, esp. one who has not yet learnt to speak or walk': *My memory is terrible: I don't remember anything from the time I was a baby.*

2. *Imperceptible* means 'not noticed because very small or slight': *There was an imperceptible movement in the tall grass and the soldier shot at it.*

   Unperceived, on the other hand, means 'not known, observed or understood, or undiscovered': *At first the fraud was unperceived, and only came to light in the annual accounts.*

3. For notes on *alive* and *living*, with examples, see Lesson 26 (pp. 244-245).

B. 1. *look after* = take care of, be responsible for

2. *Look out!* = Take care! Pay attention! Be careful!

3. *Looking forward to* = expecting with pleasure

4. *looks on* = regards, considers

5. *look . . . up* = find. . . in a book

6. *looking up* = improving, getting better

7. *look up* = find and visit

8. *look in* = come here, pay a visit

C. 1. *run out of* = be completely used up

2. *run in* = brought gradually and carefully into full use

3. *run over* = knocked down and driven over

4. *ran through* = spent fast and wastefully

5. *ran into* = met by chance

6. *ran into* = hit forcefully with a vehicle

D. 1. *knock . . . over . . . knock . . . out* = hit. . . down. . . make. . . unconscious, make. . . go to sleep

2. *knock off* = finish, stop work (at a particular time)

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 3～4 行"later, we shall undergo a progressive loss of our vigour and resistance(再迟一些,我们就要经历生命力和抵抗力逐步衰退的过程)"和第 6 行"This decline in vigour with the passing of time is called ageing (生命力随时间的流失而衰退叫作衰老)",得知 12 岁之后就开始了生命的衰退过程,因此选项(c)are succeeded by a gradual ageing process(所跟随的是一个逐渐的衰老过程)为正确项。衰老的过程是一个渐进的过程,所以选项(a)are followed by a rapid decline(紧随其后的是快速的衰退)为错误项。12 岁时是生命力最旺盛的时期,但还有待发展,所以选项(b)represent the peak of our development as human beings(代表着我们人类生命的发展高峰)为错误项。12 岁时是人类身体最旺盛的时期,而不是前 12 年都是最旺盛的时期,因此选项(d)are the

time when the human body is at its most vigorous(是人类身体最旺盛的时期)为错误项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 10～12 行"But the chances are against it, and there is a virtual limit on how long we can hope to remain alive, however lucky and robust we are(但这种可能性很小。不管我们多么幸运,多么健壮,我们所希望的长寿实际上是有限度的)",得知人人都逃脱不了衰老的过程。因此选项(a)cannot avoid the ageing process(不能避免衰老过程)为正确项。选项(b)make unpleasant discoveries(有了令人不快的发现)用于该句中在意思上讲不通。课文中说人类最可能的死亡年龄在 65～80 岁之间,而并不是说人人都会在这个年龄之间死亡,故选项(c)will die between the ages of sixty-five and eighty(会在 65 岁和 80 岁之间死去)为错误项。选项(d)will all die at the same time(会在同一时间死去)根据常识就知道这个选项是错误的,人们不可能在同一时间死亡。

3. (b)

根据课文第 13～16 行"We are so familiar with the fact that man ages, that people have for years assumed that the process of losing vigour with time, of becoming more likely to die the older we get, as something self-evident, like the cooling of a hot kettle or the wearing-out of a pair of shoes(我们对人总是要衰老的现象并不陌生,多年来就已认识到,生命随着时间流逝而丧失活力,人随着年龄的增长而接近死亡,这是不言而喻的,就像一壶热水迟早会凉下来或一双鞋渐渐会磨破一样)",得知选项(b)is not something we question very much(我们对此并没有任何质疑)为正确项。对人总是要衰老这一现象人们并不都

愿意忘掉，所以选项(a)is something we would all like to forget(是我们都愿意忘掉的事情)为错误项。不能说人类随着时间的流逝而失去生命力的过程像一块会磨损的表，所以选项(c)is like a watch that wears out(就像一块会磨损的手表)为错误项。上弦的手表或太阳依照第2热力学定律会消耗完其能量，而不是指人或动物，所以选项(d)follows the second law of thermodynamics(遵循第2热力学定律)为错误项。

4．(a)

根据课文第25行"Between twelve and eighty years we gradually lose this power...(在12岁至80岁之间，我们逐渐丧失这种能力……)"——这里的能力指自行修复的能力——和第26～27行"If we could stay as vigorous as we are at twelve, it would take about 700 years for half of us to die, and another 700 for the survivors to be reduced by half again(假如我们能保持12岁时的旺盛生命力，那么我们当中的一半人过700年才会死去，剩下的一半人再过700年才会又减少一半)"，得知人类如果能保持12岁时的自行修复能力就可以生存很长的时间，因此选项(a)retained the capacity for self-repair they enjoyed at twelve(保持他们12岁时的自行修复能力)为正确项。选项(b)didn't become run down(并不变得衰老)并不是人们会长寿的原因。人们如果能活700年就足够长了，所以选项(c)survived the first 700 years(活过第一个700年)并不是人们长寿的原因，因此为错误项。选项(d)weren't worn down by friction(不被摩擦磨损)也不是人类长寿的原因，故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5.(c)

课文中使用的是 have yet to do 的结构，等于 have not yet done，表示“尚未”的意思，如：I have yet to meet a man I can trust.（我尚未遇见我能够信赖的人。）副词 still 可以用于否定句表示强调，该词置于句子中第一个助动词前，如：I still don't understand.（我仍然还不懂。）由此得知选项(c)It still hasn't 为正确项。选项(a)It hasn't before 中的 before 不能作副词，所以用于该句中其结构是错误的。选项(b)It hasn't even 中的副词 even 表示“甚至”的意思，而不是“尚未”的意思，故为错误项。副词 yet 常用于否定句中，表示“到目前为止尚未”，在口语中应放在句末，在书面语中应放在否定词 not 的后面而不能用在句首，如：It isn't dark yet.（天还未黑。）The city had not yet been bombed.（这座城市还未受到轰炸。）因此选项(d)Yet it hasn't 为错误项。

6.(d)

在课文中，该句子的主语为不可数名词 likelihood，所以用修饰不可数名词的形容词 little 的最高级。该题中的句子主语是可数名词 possibilities，因此应该用修饰可数名词的形容词最高级 fewest，故选项(d)fewest 为正确项。选项(a)few 和选项(b)fewer 不是最高级，与原文所表达的意思不符，因此为错误项。当形容词的最高级作表语且又不与其他人或物相比时，常常不加定冠词，所以选项(c)the fewest 为错误项。

7.(b)

课文中使用的 however well 用来引导让步状语从句，意即“无论多么好”，no matter how（不管如何）可以替代 however well 引导让步状语从句，且表达相同的意思，故

选项(b)no matter how 为正确项。选项(a)whatever 也可以用来引导让步状语从句,但它在从句中只能作宾语,而不能表示程度,如:Whatever I say, I seem to say the wrong thing.(无论我说什么,都似乎说得不当。)所以该项为错误项。选项(c)how much 不能引导让步状语从句,故为错误项。选项(d)whichever way 所表达的是方式,而不是程度,故为错误项。

8. (c)

课文中使用的是表示因果关系的 so...that 结构,即"由于"、"因而"。该句中也使用了 so...that 结构,但是将 so 放在了句首。当 so 出现在句首时,句子往往倒装。这种用法只用于书面语而不用于口语中,如:So rapid is the rate of progress that advance seems to be following advance on almost a monthly basis.(进展速度如此之快,似乎每个月都有新进展。)所以选项(c)are we 为正确项。选项(a)have we 中的动词用错,应该是 be familiar with。选项(b)we have 中动词和词序都是错误的。选项(d)we are 词序错误。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的动词 reach 为及物动词,后面可以直接跟宾语。该句中使用的是动词 arrive, 而 arrive 为不及物动词,后面需跟介词 at 或 in。当表示到达某一地时用 at,当表示到达某个国家或大城市时用 in。该句中表示的是"达到某种程度",应该用介词 at,故选项(d)at 为正确项。选项(a) - 中缺少介词。选项(b)to 不能用于 arrive 后面。选项(c)in 只用于表示抵达某国家或某城市。

10. (c)

课文中使用的短语 in accordance with 意即"与……一致/

Lesson 38
Water and the traveller
水和旅行者

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Piped water from an intermittent supply could be dangerous to health.
2. The author recommends that travellers on short trips should drink canned drinks of well-known brand names because international standards of water treatment are usually followed at bottling plants.
3. Ice in drinks could be dangerous to the health because ice is only as safe as the water from which it is made.
4. You wouldn't be safe if you added 95 proof alcohol to contaminated water because it cannot be relied on to sterilize water.
5. In the absence of other sources, tap-water that is too hot to touch is generally safe to drink when it has been left to cool.

词汇练习参考答案

They blamed the situation at the factory on *poor* management.
People living near the nuclear reactor are afraid of radioactive *contamination*.
The action that the manager wanted to take was *regarded* as

extremely unwise.

We visited some *areas* in the north of the country where people have still never seen a car or a television.

When you drive through that part of the country, all you can smell are the fumes from the dozens of chemical *plants* that operate there.

When you're travelling abroad, always make sure that your passport and other documents are inspected *in your presence*, and not taken away to be looked at.

Some swimming pools *supply* fresh clean towels for their customers.

'Hot towels available *on request*,' said the notice outside the sauna.

He has stopped buying cigarettes for himself, but he never *refuses* the offer of a cigarette from someone else.

Taking travellers to *remote* parts of the world has become a major part of the modern travel industry.

There has been heavy rain today in *various* parts of the country.

摘要练习参考答案

1. Always avoid intermittent tap-water supplies.
2. Always avoid drinking untreated water from any source.
3. Always drink hot drinks or bottled or canned drinks of well-known brands.
4. Always ensure bottles are opened in front of you and that the rims are clean and dry.
5. Always boil water yourself or ask for boiled water.
6. Always refuse any cold drink from an unknown source.

7. Always avoid putting ice into drinks unless you know it is safe. (79 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[A foreigner is going to travel to some of the remote regions of your country. Write some notes giving him/her good advice under each of these headings: the people, accommodation, food, water.]

A. 1. The people

- Rather reserved—a little wary—very friendly.
- Lead simple lives—but full of hospitality.

2. Accommodation

- No hotels or guesthouses.
- Only available accommodation—stay with families.
- Possibly stay in monastery.

3. Food

- No restaurants or cafés.
- Eat with guides and families.

4. Water

- Most water from mountain streams—very clean.
- No hot running water: all water boiled.

B. If you are planning to visit some of the remoter regions of the country, there are a number of things you should know, and almost the first thing you will want to know is what the people are like. You should be aware right from the start that they are rather reserved and more than a little wary of visitors. They are even more wary of foreigners. But in spite of that, they are very friendly, and if you give them time, they will treat you with a great deal of

hospitality. They lead simple lives, of course, but once they have befriended you, everything that they have is yours to share.

And what about accommodation? Where can you stay? Well, to begin with, there are no hotels and no guesthouses. In such remote areas, the only accommodation available is with families—and this means of course sharing everything with them. Sometimes this means even sharing their home with the animals. There is one other possibility in some parts of the country, however, and that is to stay in a local monastery. While this is not always possible, if you get the chance, don't refuse it. The monks are always extremely hospitable and ask for nothing in return for their kindness.

For most people, the things that they are most concerned about when travelling in remote areas is food and drink, especially the availability of fresh water. Looking at food, first of all, there are of course no restaurants or cafés, so you will eat with guides or with families. The diet is very good in that part of the country and people eat lamb, beef, rabbit and other animals that they shoot, and they grow an incredibly large variety of vegetables. They even grow corn and wheat in some parts, so that they can make their own bread. As they are so remote, the people have developed some very special dishes of their own which all visitors enjoy.

The greatest worry of all travellers to remote places is quite simple: Is there fresh water, and can you drink it? The answer to both questions here is 'Yes'. Yes, there is

fresh water. Most of it is from fast-running mountain streams and it is very clean. And yes, you can drink it, but you can boil it if you want to. And anyway, since there is no hot running water from taps, you have to heat it to wash or bath in. (412 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. Drinking tap-water should be avoided.

2. Well-known brand names of bottled drinks should be preferred.

3. All bottles should be opened in your presence.

4. Boiled water should be requested in hotels.

5. Water should be boiled before drinking/being drunk.

B. 1. Tap-water shouldn't be drunk.

2. Bottles of water that haven't been opened in your presence shouldn't be accepted.

3. Ice shouldn't be put in drinks.

4. Alcohol shouldn't be relied on to sterilize water.

5. Methylated alcohol shouldn't be added to drinking water.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The word *drinking* here is a noun.

2. The phrase *bottling plants* here is a compound noun (i.e. plants where bottling takes place).

3. The phrase *drinking water* here is a compound noun (i.e. water for drinking).

4. The word *planning* here is a present participle (*Those planning*... = Those who are planning...).

5. The word *making* here is a noun.

6. The word *planning* here is again a present participle.

B. 1. The word *regarded* here is a past participle.

2. The words *bottled* and *canned* here are adjectives.

3. The word *carbonated* here is an adjective.

4. The word *opened* here is a past participle.

5. The word *cooled* here is a past participle.

6. The word *labelled* here is a past participle, the rest of the passive construction (*which have been*) has been deleted.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 4 行"Intermittent tap-water supplies should be regarded as particularly suspect(断断续续的水管供水应该被视为是非常可疑的)",得知通过水管间歇式地供水更容易被污染,所以选项(c)it doesn't flow continuously through the pipes(水并非连续不断地流经水管)为正确项。没有任何地方通过污水系统供水,所以选项(a)it is supplied from the sewage system(通过污水系统供水)为错误项。选项(b)it isn't safe by the time it reaches the tap(水到达水龙头时不安全)并不是水可能受到污染的原因,所以为错误项。水不会来自农田,故选项(d)it comes from farmland(水来自农田)为错误项。

2. (a)

该题考查为什么要确保瓶子是当着你的面开启的内在含

义，即只有当着你的面开启瓶子才能保证瓶子是在瓶装工厂灌装的，从而保证水的清洁、无污染，因此得知选项(a)to be assured that it was filled at a bottling plant(从而保证水是在瓶装厂灌装的)为正确项。凭瓶盖是否开启过检测水的酸性是否过高是不可能的，因此选项(b)to make sure that it isn't too acidic to drink(保证水的酸性不会过高而不能饮用)为错误项。不需开启瓶盖就能知道瓶口是否清洁干燥，因此选项(c)to check that the rim of the bottle is clean and dry(检查瓶口是否清洁干燥)为错误项。瓶盖是否开启过与水的来源无关，故选项(d)because water supplies are uncertain(因为不清楚水的来源)为错误项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 14～15 行"Ice is only as safe as the water from which it is made, and should not be put in drinks unless it is known to be safe(冰块只有制造冰块的水安全时才是保险的，只有知道冰块安全时才能加入饮料)"，得知之所以应避免在饮料中放冰块是因为冰块有可能是由被污染的水制成的。因此选项(a)you don't know if it has been made with contaminated water(你不知道冰块是否由污染的水制成)为正确项。在你不知道冰块是由什么水制成的情况下，应避免在饮料里放冰块，而不是只在你能肯定用于制冰块的水未事先煮开过才不放冰块，因此选项(b)you can be sure it hasn't been boiled first(你能肯定用于制冰块的水未先被煮开过)为错误项。选项(c)it always comes from an unknown source(冰总是来源不明)并不是事实，故为错误项。即便是当着你的面进行处理，你也不知道是否是用纯净的水制成的，所以选项(d)it hasn't been treated in your presence(没当着你的面进行处

理)为错误项。

4. (b)

根据课文第16～17行"Ethanol is more effective at a concentration of 50-70 per cent; below 20 per cent, its bactericidal action is negligible(乙醇的浓度为50%～70%时比较有效,浓度低于20%时杀菌能力基本上就不存在了)",得知选项(b) the alcoholic content is rarely sufficiently concentrated to do the job(酒精浓度不足以消毒)为正确项。酒精之所以能消毒是因为里面的乙醇含量高,乙醇含量低就起不到消毒的作用。故选项(a)only ethanol is capable of doing this(只有乙醇能消毒)为错误项。含甲醇的酒精肯定不能用来消毒,但不能用酒精消毒并不是因为它含甲醇,所以选项(c) methylated alcohol is very poisonous(加入甲醇的酒精是剧毒的)为错误项。含乙醇低的酒精根本就起不到消毒的作用,所以选项(d)it's not a very good disinfectant(它不是很好的消毒剂)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (b)

该题主要考查情态助动词的用法。该句所表达的是"即便管道用水在源头可能是安全的,但是并不总是安全的"。这是个并列句,第一个句子所表达的是一种"可能性",所以应该用情态助动词 may,后面的连词应该是表示转折的词 but,因此选项(b)may be... but 为正确项。选项(a)must be... and 中的情态助动词 must 表示"肯定"且使用连词 and 使得整个句子前后矛盾,故为错误项。选项(c)should be... though 中的情态助动词 should 表示"应该",后面使用的是用于连接让步状语的连词 though,所表达的意思与原句不符,因此为错误项。选项

(d)will be...even if 中的情态助动词 will 表示“将来会”，后面使用的是连接让步状语从句的复合连词 even if，所表达的意思与原句不符，故为错误项。

6. (a)

课文中建议在水质不保险的地方应尽量避免喝水龙头的水。所以选项(a)isn't advisable(不建议)为正确项。选项(b)is advisable(建议)的意思与原文意义恰好相反，因此为错误项。选项(c)isn't required(不要求)和选项(d)is required(要求)中的“要求”并不是“建议”，故均为错误项。

7. (c)

课文中使用的是表示方式的介词短语 by placing them on ice。该题为含条件状语从句的复合句，选项(c)if you place 为正确项。选项(a)so as to place 中的 so as to 引导的是目的状语从句，将饮料放在冰上不是目的，所以为错误项。选项(b)in placing 中的介词应该是 by 而不是 in，因为该处所表达的是通过什么方式。选项(d)to place 中的动词不定式不能作方式状语。

8. (b)

该句为否定祈使句，行为动词构成否定句时需用助动词 do，所以选项(b)Don't 为正确项。选项(a)Not 中缺少助动词 do。选项(c)Must not 中使用的是情态助动词 must。英语的祈使句中只能用动词原形，情态助动词不能用于祈使句，故为错误项。选项(d)Not to 中没有助动词，且在祈使句中应直接用动词原形，而不能用动词不定式，故为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的介词短语 in your presence 意即“当着你的

Lesson 39
What every writer wants
作家之所需

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. 'All admit radical changes of destination once the journey has begun' means All writers admit that they make major changes in a story line even after they have begun writing.
2. 'This organic process' means something like 'a living process'—a process which is not planned, but which grows as the writer writes.
3. A sentence from the passage from which you could deduce that writer must be a lonely person: ll. 12-14 — 'For the same reason, writers talk... begging response from those around them.'

词汇练习参考答案

I waited with *eager discomfort*, like a young child waiting to go on stage for the first time to receive an award or a certificate —keen, but slightly worried and uncomfortable.

I can't imagine how this place *passes for* a five-star hotel! The service is dreadful!

He's written the *skeleton* of his report, but he still has to fill in most of the details.

As they didn't do very well in our town, the Smiths are *beginning afresh* in the city fifty miles away.

It was difficult to *discern* which of the students was telling the truth.

When the man dropped his thick glasses, all he could see was *a blurred image* of the nurse in front of him.

I've been trying to *fathom* out how to do this for an hour, and even the instructions don't really help.

She was a lovely old lady, but she used to talk *interminably* to anyone about her childhood in Africa.

The teacher was very good at *winkling out* the truth from children.

Without laws, society would sink into total *anarchy*.

You have to be completely *ruthless* to be successful in politics.

She seems to be *taking time off* work for something or other almost every week.

摘要练习参考答案

Few writers know where they are going when they start writing. They may have a character or two, and full of inspiration (or something that passes for inspiration), all admit to radical changes of destination during the writing process. Instead of making a 'skeleton', a writer rewrites and changes according to what the author calls an 'organic process'. Sometimes the energy that is in a writer when writing a book continues afterwards. Some writers, for example, read nothing but their own books, and some talk interminably about their own books. They are of course misunderstood. (95 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Which do you prefer reading: novels, plays, poetry or non-fiction? Give reasons for your choice.]

A. 1. Don't enjoy reading plays. Plays written to be acted on stage.

2. I enjoy reading poetry. But like collections of poetry by a number of poets.

3. Non-fiction—history, biographies and autobiographies, 'How to...' books, 'popular science' books. Not my first choice of reading matter.

4. Prefer fiction — novels and short stories. Particularly enjoy thrillers and science fiction. But also often go back to read 'literary' novels first read a few years ago.

B. Reading is one of the most restful, most enjoyable activities I know. It is quiet, it does not disturb others and is a pleasure you can enjoy on your own almost anywhere. We live in a world which communicates through the written word and through images. Words and images entertain, and both advertising and propaganda, while different in aim, rely on the effective combination of visual images with words. Computers, too, although programmed mathematically, draw words and images together to educate and to entertain, but even a plain text on a computer screen is not quite the same as the same text in a book. I read a great deal every day—but what do I really prefer reading for pleasure?

Although I have read plays (dramas, comedies and tragedies) in the past, I must confess that I do not particularly enjoy reading them. The vast majority were written to be performed by actors on stage before a live

audience, and that's just how I enjoy them. Reading a play sitting in an armchair, it seems, is more an academic exercise than pleasure.

Non-fiction includes just what it says: any books that are not fiction, any books with factual content about a variety of subjects. Books about history and 'popular science' books are non-fiction, but they don't interest me at all. Biographies and autobiographies are non-fiction, but I have never been particularly interested in reading about other people's lives; 'How to...' books are non-fiction, too, but they are not for me — or at least they are not 'reading matter': I use such books as they meant to be used, as instruction handbooks.

No, of all the books in our local library, it's those that are labelled 'Fiction' which attract me and which I enjoy reading most. Again, like 'non-fiction', 'fiction' is a large category, but mainly it consists of novels and short stories. I like reading both, and by a whole host of different authors, English and American, this century and earlier... I particularly enjoy thrillers and science fiction, and unlike many people, I can re-read a thriller or a science fiction book again and still gain as much enjoyment from it as the first time. You see, unlike many people who speed-read fiction, I read every word, I enjoy the style a book is written in, I enjoy seeing how the writer has constructed the story. Nowadays I even go back to read 'literary' novels that I first read a few years ago. In a well-written work of fiction there is always something new to enjoy.

(429 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. 1. He had *little expectation* of passing the exam.

2. They seem to have *little appreciation* of the good things in life.

3. There has been *little improvement* in the school since I left over ten years ago.

C. 1. This organic process, *often leading* to moments...

2. I have often heard of writers *reading* nothing but...

3. A writer *doing* this is misunderstood.

D. 1. There's no point in trying to persuade him: you *might as well* shout at the moon.

2. If you've got nothing better to do, you *may as well* mend that electric lamp.

E. 1. We went to Scotland for a short holiday a month or so *back*.

2. I was in London a little while *back* when I met a very old friend of mine from university.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. A *destination* is 'a place to which someone is going or to which something is sent, especially at the end of a long journey': *The parcel was unfortunately sent to the wrong destination*.

Destiny is another word for 'fate, what must happen and cannot be changed or controlled': *It was the great man's destiny to lead his country to freedom*.

2. The adjective *indescribable* means 'impossible to describe, either because extremely good or extremely

bad, or because description is too difficult to attempt': *The scene of devastation after the earthquake was almost indescribable.*

Undescribed, on the other hand, simply means 'not described': *The final meeting between the boy and his long-lost father was left undescribed.*

3. The verb *capture* means 'take a person (or animal) prisoner': *They managed to capture the tiger alive so that they could treat it.*

   The verb *arrest* means 'seize by the power of the law': *The man was arrested on suspicion of murder and taken to the nearest police station.*

4. *Misunderstood* means 'understood wrongly': *She misunderstood what I said and went on Saturday, not Sunday.*

   Not understood: *The new regulations are clearly not understood by all the workers, so I want to explain them again.*

5. The words *draft* and *draught* are pronounced in exactly the same way: /drɑːft/.

   A *draft* is 'the first rough and incomplete form of something written, drawn or planned': *I've made a first draft of my speech for Friday, but it still needs a lot of work.*

   A *draught* is 'a current of cold air flowing through a room': *You'll catch cold if you sit in a draught.* (This is also spelt *draft* in American English.)

6. The word *judgment* (also *judgement*) is used to describe 'an opinion, or an official decision given by a

judge or a court of law': *In my judgment, we should accept the employer's offer. After four days, he passed judgment on the man.*

Criticism, on the other hand, is 'unfavourable judgment or expression of disapproval': *The new road scheme has come in for (= received) a lot of criticism.*

B. 1. Literally, a *brushstroke* is the stroke of the brush while you are painting (artistic or decorating).

2. Literally, *yeast* is 'a form of very small plant life that is used for producing alcohol in beer and wine and for making bread light and soft'.

3. Literally, the verb *fathom* means 'get at the true meaning of, come to understand'.

4. Literally, the verb *flirt with* means 'behave with a member of the opposite sex in a way that attracts interest and attention'.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第1~2行"I have known very few writers, but those I have known, and whom I respect, confess at once that they have little idea where they are going when they first set pen to paper(我所认识的作家寥寥无几,然而凡是我所认识和尊敬的作家,都立即承认在他们动笔时,不清楚要写什么,怎么写)",得知选项(b)do not work to a detailed preconceived plan(开始写作时并没有一个事先构

想好的详细计划)为正确项。选项(a)often change the location in which their novel is set(经常变换小说中故事发生的地点)只是说明作家并不是在整个故事有了详细的构想之后才动笔的一个具体事例,所以为错误项。作家恰恰未按照先列提纲再写作的方法,所以选项(c)follow the method of writing they were taught at school(遵循他们在学校所教的写作方法)为错误项。作家并非完全依靠灵感写作,所以选项(d)rely on inspiration from the moment they start until they finish(自始至终都依靠灵感)为错误项。

2. (c)

根据课文第1段的描述,可以了解到作家的写作过程并不是依照事先设计好的框架井然有序地进行,而是杂乱无章的,所以选项(c)is rather chaotic(是十分混乱的)为正确项。选项(a)is predictable and methodical(是可预测的和有条理的)与课文所述意义恰好相反,因此为错误项。作家一边写一边产生新的想法,而不是写作过程引出作家早就想好的想法,因此选项(b)brings out ideas that the writer was conscious of(引出作者事先意识到的想法)为错误项。写作程序并不是事先计划好的,所以选项(d)depends on skilful planning(依靠熟练的计划)为错误项。

3. (a)

根据课文第16~17行"This temptation to cover the distance between himself and the reader, to study his image in the sight of those who do not know him, can be his undoing: he has begun to write to please(这种企图消除自己和读者之间距离的做法,企图用不了解自己的人的观点来研究自己塑造的形象的做法,会导致作家的毁

灭，因为他已经开始为取悦他人而写作了)"，得知选项(a)might fail because he will lose touch with the creative process(可能会失败，因为他会失去创造性)为正确项。作家如果更多地考虑读者，那他就会失去独创性，会失去自我，因此选项(b)will learn a lot about himself and his work will benefit(会更多地了解自己，他的写作会从中受益)为错误项。课文中谈到作家喋喋不休地谈论自己的书，会使自己成为令人厌烦的人，而不是他觉得同别人谈话乏味，所以选项(c)will find conversations with other people very boring(会觉得同他人的谈话非常乏味)为错误项。过分地考虑读者并不能使作家理解他所追寻的形象，因此选项(d)will understand the vision he is pursuing(会理解他所追寻的形象)为错误项。

4. (d)

根据课文第18～19行"A young English writer made the pertinent observation a year or two back that the talent goes into the first draft, and the art into the drafts that follow(一两年前，一位年轻的英国作家发表了中肯的看法。他说，初稿是才华，以后各稿是艺术)"，得知优秀作品的产生主要靠的是对灵感的再创作，初稿只是灵感，经过再创作的灵感才是最好的作品，所以选项(d)the quality of editing that follows the original draft(对初稿的修改质量)为正确项。选项(a)ruthless discipline(无情的规范)只是写作所应遵循的规范，而不是产生优秀作品的关键，因此为错误项。选项(b)the anarchy of the writer's heart(作家内心的混乱)也不是产生优秀作品的关键，故为错误项。对初稿修改遍数的多少不是决定稿件质量的关键，因此选项(c)the number of drafts that follow the first one(初稿后各稿数量)为错误项。

称代词 he 是多余的。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中使用的形容词 radical 意即"根本的",选项(b)fundamental(根本的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)important(重要的)、选项(c)unforeseen(未预见到的)和选项(d)predictable(可预见的)都与 radical 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (d)

课文中使用的是作定语的过去分词 blurred,意即"朦胧的"、"模糊不清的",选项(d)An indistinct(模糊不清的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)A false(假的)、选项(b)A visionary(有眼光的;空想的)和选项(c)A sudden(突然的)都与 blurred 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的是介词 like。该题中使用的是由 as if 引导的方式状语从句,选项(b)as if they were 为正确项。选项(a)as though 也可以引导方式状语,但是该项中缺少句子的主要部分 they were,故为错误项。选项(c)as if to be 中 as if 后面应该跟完整的句子,而不能跟动词不定式,故为错误项。选项(d)as 为连词,后面跟句子,而不能跟名词或代词,故该项为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的形容词 pertinent 意即"有关的"、"中肯的",选项(c)relevant(有关的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)relative(相对的)、选项(b)extraordinary(异常的)和选项(d)cheeky(无耻的)都与 pertinent 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

Lesson 40
Waves
海浪

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. A wave isn't 'a wall of moving water' because, quite simply, a wave moves *through* the water leaving the water about where it was.
2. If the water were actually moving with a wave, the ocean would race in to the shore and cause catastrophic damage.
3. The effect of gravity on the ocean is to attempt continually to restore the surface to a flat plain.

词汇练习参考答案

For many people, life is a constant *struggle* against circumstances over which they have no control.

The modem *transmits* the information from one computer to another.

The main *features* of the new model are its revolutionary design and its relatively low cost.

The surfers came *racing in to the shore* on a row of waves.

Although the earthquake was only a minor one, it had *catastrophic results*.

There were *roughly* fifty people at the meeting.

In this story the devil *assumes* the form of a young woman to attract the young man to a life of crime.

Between the coast and the mountains in the distance, there was a series of *undulating* hills.

Last year the tourist industry *generated* nearly £ 50 million for the country.

The *force* of gravity makes things fall to earth.

摘要练习参考答案

An ocean wave, while looking like a wall of water, in fact moves through the water. As it moves through the water, it moves particles around in a roughly circular orbit; it does not take them with it. It is subject to natural laws as other things since it lives and dies in the 'great ocean of life'. Waves are born of wind, earth movements and the gravitational pulls of sun and moon, with gravity continually attempting to calm them. (80 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[The ocean.]

A. Notes for a 'poetic' composition:

1. Massive living beast. Covers three-quarters of the surface of the earth.
2. Moody, unpredictable.
3. Parts of the ocean that are always 'angry'—e.g. the 'Roaring Forties'; parts almost always complete calm—e.g. the 'Doldrums'.
4. Constantly beating at the land—trying to overcome it.
5. Man has always been fascinated by the ocean—

adventure, art (paintings, literature).

B. How often have you stood on the beach, on a pier or on a clifftop and just looked out to sea? Many of us have done it: we have just stood and wondered about the ocean.

The ocean is like a massive living beast. It has age and it has youth. It covers three-quarters of the surface of the earth. It gives life and it takes life: it saves men by throwing them up on land when they have been shipwrecked, it kills men by smashing their boats and dragging them under the waves.

The ocean has no feelings. But it has moods: it is angry and it is calm. It is moody and completely unpredictable, as all experienced sailors know. The sea must never be taken for granted. Sailors who forget this do so at their peril. The sea does not forget, nor does it forgive. There are parts of the ocean that are always 'angry', like the 'Roaring Forties' in the Atlantic, or the area around the Cape, and there are parts that are almost always completely calm, like the 'Doldrums'. Both areas can kill, as many sailors in the great days of sailing ships discovered, and as ocean-going yachtsmen are still aware.

The ocean is jealous, too—jealous of the land—and is constantly beating at its shores, trying to overcome it. Indeed, the ocean will only rest when it has recaptured all of the dry land on the earth, and even then it may not rest. The ocean is also patient. Look at the way it slowly and gently wears away the shoreline and the cliffs year by year, decade by decade. It has all the time in the world, and if men build concrete defences against its waves, so what?

The ocean knows it is stronger than man's defences and that it is only a matter of time before, hammering endlessly on the shore, it will be let in again.

Man has always been fascinated by the ocean—afraid of it, yes, but fascinated by it, as we are fascinated by a cobra. Dangerous things will always hold a fascination for man. And it is this fascination that has led to man building boats and going to sea. It has also led to the creation of great art—paintings and literature inspired by the sea.

(389 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. Words of foreign origin in English (especially from Greek and Latin) can create problems when we come to form plurals. There is a natural tendency to make all nouns conform to the regular rules for the pronunciation and spelling of English plurals. However, many retain their foreign plurals. These nouns can be put into three main groups.

- nouns of foreign origin with anglicized plurals: *album—albums*, *genius—geniuses*
- nouns with both foreign *and* anglicized plurals: *cactus—cacti / cactuses*, *antenna—antennae / antennas*, *index—indices / indexes*, *automaton—automata /*

automatons

- nouns with foreign plurals only: *phenomenon—phenomena*, *alumus—alumni*, *stratum—strata*, *analysis—analyses*

index—indices—indexes

automaton—automata/automatons

appendix—appendices

alumnus—alumni

stratum—strata

analysis—analyses

criterion—criteria

B. 1. the others　2. The others　3. The other
4. others　5. other

C. excite—excitement　live—life　move—movement
generate—generation　restore—restoration

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第 2 段的描述可以得知海浪具有：浪峰、波谷、浪高、波长和周期这 5 种基本特征，因此选项(d)Five 为正确项。其他 3 项为错误项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 9～10 行"Although an ocean wave gives the impression of a wall of water moving in your direction, in actuality waves move through the water leaving the water about where it was(虽然海浪给人的印象是一堵由水组成

的墙向你压过来，而实际上，浪从水中移过，而水则留在原处)"，得知水本身并未怎么移动，而是浪通过水在移动，所以选项(c)a motion through water(通过水的运动)为正确项。选项(a)a wall of moving water(由移动的水组成的墙)只是海浪给人的一种印象，而事实并非如此，故为错误项。选项(b)the energy of the sun(太阳能)并不是海浪。课文中谈到风将太阳的信息带给了大海，大海用波浪的形式传递这种信息，波浪是传递信息的载体，而不是信息本身，故选项(d)an ancient powerful message(古老而强大的信息)为错误项。

3. (d)

根据第 2 题所引用句子中的"leaving the water about where it was(而水则留在原处)"，得知波浪过后水仍留在原处，所以选项(d) leaves behind the water that it disturbed(将它所搅动的水留在身后)为正确项。海浪将水留在身后，所以它并不能带走一切，故选项(a)carries everything with it(带走所有的一切)为错误项。课文中说，如果水和浪一起移动的话，大海和海里的东西就会向岸边疾涌而来，带来明显的灾难性后果，但是水并不同海浪一起移动，所以选项(b)leads to catastrophic results(导致灾难性后果)为错误项。选项(c) advances and then retreats(前进，而后后退)并不是海浪运动的规律，故为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文第 18～19 行"Once waves have been generated, gravity is the force that drives them in a continual attempt to restore the ocean surface to a flat plain(一旦波浪形成，地球引力是持续不断地企图使海面复原为平面的力量)"，得知地球引力要使大海恢复理想的状态，即水平的

海面，因此选项(a)a totally level surface(完全水平的表面)为正确项。地球引力竭尽全力要平息海浪，而不是使大海上下起伏，因此选项(b)rising and falling(上下起伏)为错误项。大海持续地运动，就意味着海浪翻滚，这不是地球引力所努力达到的目的，因此选项(c) constant motion(持续的运动)为错误项。选项(d)leaving particles behind(把微粒留在身后)并不是地球引力的作用，而是海浪的作用，故为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

课文中使用的介词 among 表示"属于"、"在……之中"，选项(c)one of 表示"……之一"，与 among 所表达的意思相同，因此为正确项。海浪只是地球上最复杂的自然现象之一，所以如果选项(a)considered(被认为)后加上 one of 就正确了。选项(b)between 表示"两者之间"，在两者以上之中用 among。如前所述，海浪只是地球上最复杂的自然现象之一，而不是多种现象，故选项(d)several of 为错误项。

6. (a)

课文中使用的动词 include 意即"包括"，短语动词 consist of 表示相同的意思，故选项(a)consist 为正确项。选项(b)consisting 为现在分词，不能独立构成句子谓语，因此为错误项。该句只是对自然现象的陈述，所以不能用现在完成时或正在进行时，因此选项(c)have consisted 和选项(d)are consisting 均为错误项。

7. (d)

课文中使用的是由 although 引导的让步状语从句的复合句，该句使用的是由 but 连接的并列句结构，在这里表达出相同的意思，即"海浪可能使人觉得是一堵水墙，但是

实际上……"。情态助动词 may 表示"可能",故选项(d)may为正确项,而其他 3 个选项所用的情态助动词都不是此意思,因此均为错误项。

8. (d)

课文中使用的是动词 generate 的被动形式,表示"由……形成"。该句中使用的是该动词的名词形式 generation。该句考查冠词的用法。英语中以 of 引导的介词短语作定语置于名词之后。特指有关事物时,名词前应使用定冠词 the,因此选项(d)The generation 为正确项。选项(a)A generation 中不应用不定冠词 a。该处 generation 指某种行为,不能用复数形式,因此选项(b)Generations 为错误项。选项(c)Generation 中缺少定冠词。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的形容词 on-going 表示"持续的"、"不间断的",选项(d)continuing(持续的,不间断的)所表达的意思与 on-going 相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)going on 不能作形容词用。选项(b)carrying on 指"继续做",该句的主语是物(waves)而不是人,故该项为错误项。选项(c)moving forward(向前进)不是"持续的"意思,因此也为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的动词 give,在句子中表示"给(人……印象)",实际上也就是表示"形成(某种印象)",因此选项(a)creates(形成)为正确项。选项(b)receives(收到)、选项(c)demands(要求)和选项(d)contributes(贡献)都与 give 所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

11. (d)

课文中使用的名词 results 意即"结果",选项

Lesson 41
Training elephants
训练大象

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The author considers the ‘tough’ method of training to be stupid because it produces resentful animals that could later become man-killers.
2. Elephants can be compared with dogs because like them they are capable of a considerable degree of personal affection.
3. According to the author, the key to successful elephant training is the close relationship between an elephant and his mahout.
4. The main advantage of training an elephant that is between fifteen and twenty years old is that it is almost ready to undertake heavy work and earn its keep straightaway.
5. The main disadvantage of training an elephant between fifteen and twenty years old is that elephants of this age are not tamed very easily.
6. Tame elephants can be used to help in the training of wild elephants by giving the wild animals confidence. Tame elephants are also used to get the wild elephant to the training establishment.

词汇练习参考答案

Apart from any *moral considerations*, I just couldn't kill an animal: the sight of blood makes me sick.

The king's trusted minister *turned* traitor and poisoned him.

It is such an exclusive school that they *assign* one teacher to each puplil.

Like dogs, cats are clearly *capable of a considerable degree of personal affection* towards their owners.

When the old lady died, her pet cat *pined to death*: she refused to eat until she too died a fortnight later.

In order to *underline* what he had just said, the speaker said it again and wrote the key phrase on the board.

If you find it impossible to be or to act in a *subservient* manner to other people, don't become a waiter!

The man *tethered* his dog to a post while he went into the shop.

The rise in the number of very young children who have started smoking is *particularly alarming*.

As I knelt in the temple, the monks began a *monotonous and soothing chant* which made me feel rather sleepy.

The heroine refused the hero's *blandishments*, but with great difficulty: he was handsome and very persuasive.

The tiger *lashes fiercely* at anyone who gets anywhere near the bars of its cage.

摘要练习参考答案

A newly-arrived elephant is placed with two partly trained captives and left undisturbed, with plenty of food and water. Training begins when it is eating normally. The trainer stands

in front of the elephant while two assistants on tame elephants control the captive from either side and others chant and rub their hands over him. Although the elephant usually lashes out with his trunk, the movements are controlled by the trainer and the elephant usually finishes with a sore trunk.

(80 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[It is cruel to train animals to perform tricks for our amusement.]

Whenever people have travelled in the past to distant and foreign lands, they have returned not only with stories of their adventures and what they found, but also with samples. They have brought back people as slaves, they have brought back animals, birds and plants, and the flora and fauna that they could not physically bring back with them, they have drawn, painted or photographed.

Many of the zoos in the world were built originally to accommodate the elephants, lions, tigers, bears, chimpanzees, camels, vultures, eagles, zebras and so on that adventurers brought back with them, particularly in the nineteenth century. In the past, people were curious about animals and birds from other lands around the world. Their curiosity was natural. Seeing wild animals in zoos was part of education, and people saw nothing wrong in training some of those same animals and birds to entertain.

The world has changed, however, and we are far more aware of man's responsibility for the planet, the environment and the creatures who live on it. Yet there are still animals in

zoos, and animals are still trained to perform tricks for our amusement and entertainment. Over the last few decades we have become much more conscious that zoos can actually help to keep species alive. In fact most zoos now proclaim to exist almost solely to care for and help breed endangered species whatever they may be—tigers or monkeys, mice or bats, birds or insects, and particularly pandas.

We don't *own* the other species on this planet. Far from it. But are we even the guardians? In the belief that we should at least take responsibility, many devote their lives now to the preservation of endangered species both in the wild and in captivity. And if most believe that all animals have a right to be protected, surely they also have a right not to be treated as inferior to man. We have no right to abuse or mistreat wild animals by training them to 'do tricks' for us. The lion in a circus who is made to jump through a burning hoop is not the same proud carnivore that roams wild in Africa. The sea lions and seals that are trained to clap their flippers and balance balls on their noses in return for fish rewards are not the same creatures that swim free in many oceans in the world. And the chimpanzees who are dressed in ridiculous human clothes and are trained to do tricks for people to laugh at are not the creatures who should be allowed to live their lives naturally in social groups in their native habitat. By training animals to 'do tricks'—and the training methods are often more cruel physically than the mental cruelty of the public act of unnatural performance—trainers have robbed them of any pride they had.

There is an increasing awareness of this problem in many countries now, but the battle has not been won. While some

films now highlight (or at least make an effort to highlight) the problems of 'man and the animals' (for example, *Free Willy*, or the film *Born Free* made a few years ago), others still simply *use* animals, almost as 'objects'. And indeed trained animals are still used in advertising: there is one tea company that advertises its products on British television using trained chimpanzees in spite of considerable public objection.

It is not only cruel to train animals to entertain us, it is immoral. It is degrading to animals, but perhaps just as much, it lowers our dignity as human beings. (597 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. That's the famous cross-eyed lion *who* was in all those films.

2. The couple just did not know how to thank the dog *who* had pulled their daughter out of the water and saved her life.

B. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The verb *train* means 'give or be given a course of instruction or practice, especially in a profession or skill': *She trained as an opera singer. These dogs have all been trained to detect drugs.*

Educate, on the other hand, means 'teach or train, especially through formal instruction at a school or college': *She was born in the U.S.A. but educated in England.*

2. The phrase *apart from* means 'without considering':

Apart from a few small errors, it's a good piece of work.

Apart from can also mean 'as well as': *Apart from being too large, this sweater just doesn't suit me.*

Except, as a conjunction + verb, means 'apart from': *He can do everything around the house except cook.*

As a preposition, *except* means 'not including, leaving out, but not': *Everyone was tired except John.*

3. The noun *degree*, as used in the text, means 'a point on an imaginary line used for measuring or comparing qualities, feeling, abilities, etc.': *The minister expressed a degree of optimism about the economic situation.*

   Rank refers to 'a level of relative value, ability, importance, etc. on a scale, especially the official, position one holds in the army, navy, etc.': *After two years he reached the rank of sergeant.*

4. *Afterwards* is an adverb meaning 'after that, later': *We went for a swim. Afterwards, we lay and sunbathed.*

   After is a preposition meaning 'following in time, later than': *We'll leave after breakfast.*

B. 1. Because she tells so many lies, everything she says *must be taken with a grain of salt.*

2. Getting my father to lend me money was always *a ticklish business*: he wanted to know exactly how much I wanted, why I wanted it, when he could have it back, and so on.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 2～4 行"The former method simply consists of setting an elephant to work and beating him until he does what is expected of him. Apart from any moral considerations this is a stupid method of training, for it produces a resentful animal who at a later stage may well turn man-killer(强硬法就是驱使象去干活,把它打到顺从为止。且不说道义问题,这本身就是一种愚蠢的训练方法,因为这种训练方法会使动物反感,在以后某个时期可能会变成伤人的动物)",得知用野蛮的方法训练大象会导致不好的结果,所以选项(a)can have unpleasant consequences later(会给以后带来不好的后果)为正确项。从前面的描述就知道这种方法是不可取的,所以选项(b)is the most effective method available(是目前最有效的方法)为错误项。文中提到采用温和的训练方法需要更多的耐心,所以选项(c)increases the time it takes to train the animal(增加训练动物的时间)为错误项。野蛮的训练方法会使大象变成伤人的动物,所以不可能顺从地干活,故选项(d)ensures loyal service for years to come(保证日后大象多年的忠诚服务)为错误项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 11～12 行"... but they do underline the general principle that the relationship between elephant and mahout is the key to successful training(……但强调了一项基本原则,即象和训象员之间的关系是训象成功与否

的关键)",得知训象员和大象相处得好才可能成功地训练大象,因此选项(c)the mahout and the elephant get on well together(训象员和大象相处得好)为正确项。选项(a)the mahout is a responsible person(训象员是个负责任的人)与选项(b)elephant calves don't refuse to feed(幼象不拒绝进食)并不是成功训练大象的关键所在,故为错误项。从课文中得知,大象只认一个主人,所以最好由一人专门训练,所以选项(d)several trainers are assigned to the job(委派几个训象员训练)为错误项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 13 ~ 14 行"The most economical age to capture an elephant for training is between fifteen and twenty years, for it is then almost ready to undertake heavy work and can begin to earn its keep straight away(捕捉 15~20 岁之间的大象进行训练最为经济。这个年龄的象差不多已能干重活了,可以很快挣回饲养它的开支)",得知训练成年象的主要诱惑是及早得到回报,所以选项(a)early financial returns(早获得经济回报)为正确项。成年象不易驯服,所以选项(b)their willingness to obey their trainers(乐意服从于训象员)为错误项。选项(c)the avoidance of anxiety in the elephant(避免大象的焦虑)和选项(d)that elephants are difficult to keep(大象很难养)并不是训练成年象的主要原因,故均为错误项。

4. (c)

根据课文第 24 ~ 25 行"When it is eating normally, its own training begins(当它正常进食了,它的训练就开始了)",得知选项(c)the animal is feeding normally(大象正常进食)为正确项。选项(a)it is with other elephants(它同其他大象在一起)并不意味着它就能接受训练,故为错

误项。只有在训练中训象员才能逐渐同大象建立良好关系，并不是建立了良好关系之后才进行训练，所以选项(b)the mahout has established a good relationship with it(当训象员同它建立了良好的关系)为错误项。单纯用棒子并不能驯服大象，所以选项(d)it needs to be controlled with a sharp pointed stick(它需要用一根尖头棒子控制)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

   课文中使用的 apart from 表示"且不说"，副词 aside 可以用于短语后面表示该义，如：All kidding aside, let's talk seriously.（别开玩笑了，咱们言归正传。）所以选项(d)aside(撇开，放在一边)为正确项。选项(a)besides(除了)、选项(b)except(除外)和选项(c)instead(代替)都与 apart from 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

6. (c)

   该题考查动词 enjoy 的用法。动词 enjoy 后面可以直接跟名词，也可以跟动词的-ing 形式，所以选项(c)having 为正确项。enjoy 后面不能跟动词不定式、动词原形及介词短语，因此其他 3 个选项都是错误项。

7. (b)

   课文中使用的 such 表示特指这类的极端事例，选项(b)of this kind 为介词短语，置于其所修饰的 extreme cases 之后，也可表示"这类的极端事例"，故为正确项。其他 3 项在结构上都讲不通，因此均为错误项。

8. (b)

   课文中单纯使用的由 while 引导的时间状语从句表示"与此同时"。该题中使用 at the same time 用来强调动作同时进行。故选项(b)at the same time 为正确项。选项

Lesson 42
Recording an earthquake
记录地震

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The rods of various lengths and thicknesses stood up on end like ninepins on a rigid table. If there was a gentle earthquake shock, only the unstable rods fell over, but a severe shock would make them all fall over. The direction in which they fell would also tell the scientist the direction from which the shock came.
2. This simple seismometer worked by rods was unsatisfactory because it was not delicate enough.
3. The observation that a person falls down if a bus he is standing on starts suddenly. This is because his feet move on, but his head stays still.
4. The three 'elements' are movement up and down, to and fro, and from side to side.
5. The third wave of an earthquake is the last to be recorded because it has travelled round the earth through the surface rocks.

词汇练习参考答案

The tent was supported on a *rigid* metal framework, but it

still blew over.

The nurse left when all the babies were *slumbering* peacefully in their cots.

She served us tea in *delicate* bone-china teacups.

'Invite all the family to stay with us for the holidays?!' he exclaimed. 'What a *silly suggestion*!'

He signed his name *legibly* so that anyone could read it.

Heavy rains are an *everyday* occurrence here at this time of the year.

Apples generally *tend* to ripen earlier in this part of the country.

She walked slowly *to and fro* in front of the window as she talked to her husband on her mobile.

I've only hurt my hand *slightly*; I won't have to go to hospital or anything.

The pilot switched on the motor and the helicopter blades *rotated* slowly, before gradually picking up speed.

The woman screamed as the worm that her daughter gave her *wriggled* in the palm of her hand.

We now have scientific instruments that can record *the path described by a particle* of energy.

There was a huge *bluebottle* flying round my bedroom and I knew I would never get to sleep.

摘要练习参考答案

The seismometer used for recording the horizontal component of earthquake wave movements works on a fairly simple principle. Someone standing on a bus will fall over if the bus starts suddenly; that's because his feet move while his head

stays still. To illustrate this, a weight tied to a long piece of string and nearly touching the ground will not move even though the hand holding the string moves to and fro. Attach a pen to the weight, its point resting on a piece of paper (flat or round a rotating drum) and you have a seismometer. When the drum is still, the pen draws a straight line; when it is shaken, the pen draws a wriggly line. (118 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[An earthquake.]

The day was hot, unusually hot for the time of year. My family and I had gone to the island for our annual holiday for the third time in three years and my parents had chosen early June because the weather was normally just right then. We could all swim in the sea and sunbathe, but we did not have to stay indoors for an hour or so at midday as we would have to if we went to the island in July or August.

We were having breakfast outside on the patio, all in shorts, T-shirts and sandals, ready to rush away to the beach straight afterwards. 'I think it's going to be very hot today,' my father said, 'so I suggest we all come back to the villa for lunch. That way, if the sun's too hot to sit outside, we can have lunch indoors.'

We all nodded agreement and began to help mother clear the table.

Suddenly there was one of those strange pauses when everyone stops talking or doing things. It was odd, but what was even odder was the fact that there was silence.

'Listen,' my mother said slowly, 'the birds have stopped

singing, and I haven't heard any cicadas for a few minutes, either.' Usually, there was an almost constant noise of cicadas chirping in the background.

We all stopped and listened. Everything did seem unusually quiet. Then we all felt something. We weren't sure what it was. My father, who had his elbows on the table at the time, said later that something had slid along the table and gently rubbed his elbows. I felt someone move the seat of my chair very slightly. My brother and sister, who were sitting on a bench seat, both felt the seat move a little. We all looked at each other. No one said anything. Then the silence was broken by the sound of the bell in the local village church tower. It rang just once, as if on its own—and the table began to move, and the patio under our feet, and the sensation was horrifying. Suddenly it felt as if the patio was a boat on water and we were passengers with no way of steering it. And as the ground began to shudder beneath us, the bell from the church began to ring almost regularly, and we heard the noise of stone against stone, concrete against concrete, and the sound of smashing glass, as walls collapsed in nearby buildings. By now there was a general angry rumbling all around, as if some prehistoric monster was beginning to wake up. There was a loud crack, and from where I was lying—we were all lying on the ground now—I looked over the edge of our heaving patio to see the small donkey path below crack open like an egg. Suddenly, with a splintering crash, all the tiles on the roof of our villa flew and slid off onto the roof of the villa below.

Then, just as suddenly, the ground stopped moving.

There was a pause of about fifteen seconds, a pause of

almost absolute silence, before we heard the first cries of people from the nearby streets and villas. We all looked at each other again, as we had done when the first tremors had hit us, but this time with relief.

'My God, an earthquake,' said my brother. (One of us had to say it.)

'Yes,' said my father, 'and we're all alive. But let's go and see what damage has been done in the villa. After that we'll see how we can help in the village.' (607 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. For notes on *device* and *devise*, with examples, see Lesson 21 (p. 189).

2. The verb *travel* means 'go from one place to another, especially to a distant place': *If I had a lot of money, I'd travel all over the world.*

   A *trip* (noun) is 'a journey, esp. a short one for pleasure or for a particular purpose (e.g. business)': *We took all the old people in our village on a day trip to London.*

3. Although they look alike, the verbs *adopt* and *adapt*, are quite different in meaning.

   The verb *adopt* means 'take and use as one's own': *It has taken a time, but we have finally adopted the methods that our competitors have found so successful.*

The verb *adapt* means 'make or become suitable for new needs, different conditions, etc.': *He adapted an old car engine to fit his boat.*

B. Note the pronunciation of the noun *record* /ˈrekɔːd/ in 'the graphic record' and the verb *record* /rɪˈkɔːd/ in 'the first wave records the arrival'. In their examples, students should underline the stressed syllables.

1. Noun *export*: What are your main exports? —Oil and wool.
   Verb *export*: They have always exported a lot of oil to neighbouring countries.
2. Noun *import*: Oil is this country's most important import.
   Verb *import*: Many of their cars are imported from Japan.
3. Noun *produce*: Our neighbours sell their own produce in the market.
   Verb *produce*: When children are learning to play the violin, they produce some strange noises!
4. Noun *conduct*: That boy's conduct is excellent.
   Verb *conduct*: I'd love to conduct a large orchestra.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 5 行"Thus the rods, by falling, and by the direction in which they fell, recorded for the slumbering

scientist the strength of a shock that was too weak to waken him, and the direction from which it came(由于地震太弱而未惊醒科学家时,木棒倒下的多少和倒下的方向就为科学家记录下了地震的强度和地震方向)",得知简单的由木棒做成的仪器,就能粗略地表示出地震的强度和方向。所以选项(b)indicate roughly how strong an earthquake is and its direction(粗略地显示地震的强度和方向)为正确项。由木棒做成的仪器只能粗略地表示地震的强度和方向,不可能记录地震的运动,因此选项(a)record the movement of an earthquake(记录地震的运动)为错误项。当轻微地震发生时,用木棒做成的仪器不可能惊醒正在睡觉的科学家,因此选项(c)wake up a sleeping scientist when an earthquake is in progress(当地震发生时能惊醒正在睡觉的科学家)为错误项。木棒会随着地震的强度倒下,而绝不会随着地震的运动而立起,所以选项(d)rise and fall in line with the movement of an earthquake(能随着地震的运动立起或倒下)为错误项。

2. (c)

根据课文第21~22行"In the midst of all this movement, the weight and the pen would be still. But as the paper moved from side to side under the pen point, its movement would be recorded in ink upon its surface(在地震发生时,重物和笔不动。由于纸在笔尖下来回运动,纸的表面就会用墨水记录下这些运动的情况)",得知较为复杂的仪器就是靠静止的笔在左右移动的纸上记录地震的,所以选项(c)the pen remains still while recording the irregular movement of the paper beneath it(笔在保持不动的情况下记录笔尖下面的纸的不规则运动)为正确项。从前文中得知笔是不动的,所以选项(a)the pen moves up and

down as paper moves steadily beneath it(当纸在笔尖下稳定地移动时,笔在上下移动)为错误项。纸和笔一起运动是无法书写清楚的,所以选项(b)the pen and the paper beneath it move together in response to the earthquake(笔和笔下面的纸在发生地震时一起运动)为错误项。纸是卷在一个圆筒上的,纸随着圆筒的旋转而旋转,可是笔却保持不动,所以选项(d)the pen rotates with the moving drum beneath it(笔随着其下面的圆筒一起旋转)为错误项。

3. (c)

根据课文第25~26行"The apparatus thus described, however, records only the horizontal component of the wave movement...(然而,这里所说的仪器记录下来的只是地震波运动中的水平部分……)",得知由不动的笔在卷在旋转圆筒上的纸上所记录的地震运动是不完全的,所以选项(c)does not provide a comprehensive record of an earthquake(并没有全面地记录下地震的情况)为正确项。选项(a)gives a full picture of an earthquake(全面地反映出地震的情况)与课文所述意义恰好相反,因此为错误项。记录仪器只能记录波的水平运动,而不是只能记录深层波的运动,所以选项(b)records deep wave movements only(只记录下深层波的运动)为错误项。该仪器所反映的是水平运动,而不是垂直运动,因此选项(d)only reflects vertical movement(只反映出垂直运动)为错误项。

4. (b)

根据课文最后一段的讲述,得知新发明的仪器能够记录下发生在700英里以外的地震,由于能够记录先后到达的3种波的运动,所以能全面地记录地震运动。由此得知选项(b)give a comprehensive record of an earthquake

more than 700 miles away(全面地记录 700 英里以外发生的地震的情况)为正确项。该仪器能记录发生在 700 英里以外的地震,而不只是近处的地震,因此选项(a)record all three movements of a nearby earthquake(记录近处发生的地震的 3 种运动)为错误项。并不是该仪器能传输地球内部的信息,而是人们通过对前两种波的研究对地球内部的情况有所了解,因此选项(c) send information about the interior of the earth(传输地球内部的信息)为错误项。第 3 种波是围绕地球通过表面岩石传送的,并不是说该仪器能测出地震对表面岩石的影响,因此选项(d)reflect the effect of an earthquake on surface rocks(反映地震对表面岩石的影响)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

课文中使用的是 too...to...结构,表示"地震太弱,而不能将科学家惊醒",选项(d)was not strong enough(不够强大)为正确项。当 enough 修饰形容词和副词时应该置于被修饰词的后面,如 big enough(足够大)、good enough(足够好)、hard enough(太难了)等。选项(a)was not enough strong 中的 enough 应该置于 strong 的后面,故为错误项。选项(b)was strong enough 应该为否定形式,才与原句意思相符。选项(c)was too strong 所表达的意思与原句意义正好相反,故为错误项。

6. (b)

课文中使用的是形容词 delicate 的比较级 more delicate。英语中可以使用"of + 名词词组"代替形容词作修饰语,如:It will be of great interest to you.(你会对它大感兴趣的。)The result is of little importance.(这个结果意义不大。)这种结构多用表示程度的形容词。该题中就使用

变方向)为错误项。选项(c)remains solid(保持固态)中的 solid 与 still 的意思不同,因此为错误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用 but slightly 以表示"(重物虽动了)但是动得很小",选项(c)only 表示"只是轻微地动了",与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)even(甚至)、选项(b)unless(除非)和选项(d)except(除外)都不能表达 but 的意思,故均为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的是动词 devise(设计)的被动形式,选项(a)invented(发明,设计)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)described(描述)、选项(c)sold(卖)和选项(d)discovered(发现)都与其意思不同,故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的 one after the other at short intervals,表示"前后相间的",即曲线根据 3 种地震波到达的先后次序显示这 3 种地震波。这 3 种地震波前后到达之间的间隔时间不同,因此是不规律的,所以选项(c)irregularly(不规律地)为正确项。我们知道这 3 种波传递的时间是不同的,所以选项(a)in a synchronised fashion(以同步的方式)为错误项。这 3 种波是先后到达,而不是同时到达,因此选项(b)almost together(几乎是一起到达)为错误项。这 3 种波之间到达的时间有间隔,而不是停顿,因此选项(d)with brief breaks in between(之间有短暂的停顿)为错误项。

Lesson 43

Are there strangers in space?

宇宙中有外星人吗?

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The word 'galaxy' describes a Milky Way or a collection of stars (of which there are about three thousand million in the universe).
2. According to the author, it is highly probable that life exists in other parts of the universe because there are so many stars with planets that 'intelligent life is bound to be a natural part of the universe'.
3. Even if one were travelling at 186,000 miles per second, it would be extremely difficult to visit another planet because most of them would take an average of a hundred years to reach.
4. It might be possible to accomplish interstellar communication using the radio frequency of the 21-centimetre wavelength, or 1,420 megacycles per second, which is the natural frequency of emission of hydrogen atoms in space.

词汇练习参考答案

This lamp is broken, and we want to buy another one *approximately* the same—if we can find one.

It was too early for life to develop four billion years ago, given the *prevailing primitive state* of the earth.

I have an *automatic messenger* on my PC: I can programme it to display a message on screen at a certain time in the future.

Man has already overcome some of the *obstacles* to space flight, but there are many more.

There are now lots of pieces of machinery (old satellites and so on) *orbiting* the earth.

At the moment, *interstellar* space travel is only possible in science fiction.

His present job was all the result of a *chance encounter* with the company's Human Resources Manager at a party.

摘要练习参考答案

The first obstacle to communication with other planets is the vast distance between star systems. On average, stars can be 100 light years away, which means that, if anyone left an automatic messenger here in the past, a broadcast from the 1920s would only be halfway home. Although chemical rockets have no chance of reaching other stars, there is nevertheless one way to communicate with other intelligent beings and that is to use the natural frequency of the emission of hydrogen atoms in space. Although only discovered in 1951, this now seems to be our best chance of interstellar communication. (100 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Flying saucers.]

Flying saucers, or UFOs, as they are usually called now (Unidentified Flying Objects), are the names given to

unexplained phenomena which have been seen in our skies for apparently as long as history has been recorded. Ancient texts from many parts of the world have mentioned 'flying chariots' with fire coming from them and many have come down to earth carrying 'gods'. Many of these phenomena in the past were clearly reports of planets (Venus, for example), meteors, meteorites, ball lightning and other natural, physical events which are still mistaken for UFOs. Some, however, might well have been simplified reports of visits by extraterrestrials. Professor Ronald Bracewell has suggested that our earth may have been visited in the distant past by a superior civilisation. If he were correct and visitors from such a civilisation left an 'automatic messenger', might they also not have visited different parts of the world and shown themselves to certain people?

In recent years, and certainly since the 1940s, there seem to have been more reports of UFOs than ever before. Various explanations have been given for this. One suggestion is that there are extraterrestrials who have become more interested in our planet since we began to 'play' with the atmosphere of the world on a global scale, to detonate nuclear bombs and since we have begun to escape from our own gravity into orbit and to the moon. Another explanation is that most reports of UFOs are false reports from people who simply want their 'moment of fame and glory' in the media, and the media do seem to rule the lives of many people in the world. Other sightings can, and have been explained as weather balloons, the planet Venus, ordinary aircraft seen at unusual angles in unusual light, special weather clouds, reflections of light on low cloud, and so on.

But even official government investigators in many countries have had to admit there are certain cases of UFO sightings which defy rational scientific explanation, and these are the ones that are worrying.

Whatever UFOs may be, very few governments will admit that they know anything about them—or even that they are interested in them. And yet strangely, in spite of regular reports of sightings and contact with UFOs in the press, radio and on television, governments maintain an almost ominous silence. During the Cold War, it was suggested that UFOs were possibly new kind of craft developed by the other side. But little has been said. It is known that both the Russians and the Americans have built and flown circular aircraft that might be described as 'flying saucers', but again little has been said about their development or how successful they may have been.

There are almost dozens of theories about UFOs. They could be advanced aircraft developed by nations on the earth, especially the U.S.A. or Russia. They could be extraterrestrial —from somewhere else in our solar system or from another star system. Could they perhaps be from another dimension, as has been suggested? Could most instances of UFOs be the result of mass hysteria or psychological disturbances? Whatever they may be, one thing is certain: there are just too many completely unexplained occurrences for them to be ignored for very much longer.

Does art imitate life? Or does life imitate art? Are films like *ET*, *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*, *Men in Black* and *Independence Day* previews of what might really happen on the earth sometime soon? Or are they just like the science

fiction novels of Jules Verne and H. G. Wells, visions of a purely fictional future? (598 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. 1. It's an excellent film—you're *sure to* enjoy it.

2. I was just *about to* leave the house when the telephone rang.

3. The concert was *due to* begin at 7.30, but it was delayed for half an hour.

B. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. A *planet* is 'a large body in space that moves round a star, especially round the sun': *Mars is sometimes called the 'Red Planet'.*

A *star*, on the other hand, is 'a very large mass of burning gas in space, especially one that can be seen as a small bright point of light in a clear sky at night': *When it is dark, the stars come out.*

2. The verb *estimate* means 'judge or calculate the nature, value, size, amount, etc., of something, esp. roughly': *The film cost an estimated $ 25 million to make.*

Esteemed means 'respected and admired': *The old teacher was much loved and highly esteemed.*

3. The adjective *natural*, as used in the text, means 'of or being what exists or happens ordinarily in the world': *The country's natural resources include forests, coat and oil.*

The adjective *physical* means 'of or for the body': *You should take a lot more physical exercise.*

4. The adjective *unsaid* means '(thought of but) not spoken' and is usually used in the phrase 'left unsaid': *Whatever you might have thought, it would have been better left unsaid.*

   Untold, however, is an adjective that usually means 'too great to be counted or measured, limitless': *She has done untold damage to our chances of winning the election.*

   It can also mean 'not told or expressed' as in: *The full true story of his part in the resistance movement remains untold.*

5. The verbs *search for* and *search* are very close in meaning, and can be confusing.

   Search for means 'look for': *They have searched for him everywhere, but they haven't found him. Scientists are still searching for a cure to the common cold.*

   Search means 'look at, through, into, etc., or examine carefully and thoroughly to try to find something': *They searched the house from top to bottom. When the boy went missing, they searched the nearby woods first. The police searched the man when they arrested him.*

   Look at these sentences using *search x for y*: *They searched the woods for the children. She searched the man for drugs. We will have to search the building for weapons.*

B. 1. He's incapable of adding up a simple list of figures, let alone *doing his annual accounts for the Inland Revenue*.

2. He doesn't earn enough to support himself, let alone *a wife and children*.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第6～7行"...and as the number of stars in the universe is so vast, this possibility becomes virtual certainty(……因为宇宙中恒星的数目极其庞大,所以存在着产生生命星球的这种可能性是肯定无疑的)",得知选项(d)of the sheer number of planets in the universe(因为宇宙中的恒星数目非常之大)为正确项。文中说宇宙中的恒星数目极其庞大,所以可能有存在生命的星球,但并未说有许多类似地球的行星,因此选项(a) there are plenty of planets like our own(有许多像我们的地球这样的行星)为错误项。选项(b)the other planets in our solar system are unlikely to support life(太阳系中的其他星球不可能有生命)并不是其他星球有可能存在生命的前提,所以为错误项。整个宇宙中庞大的恒星数目是其他星球可能存在生命的前提,而不仅仅是银河系,所以选项(c)our own galaxy is so large(我们自己的星群非常庞大)为错误项。

2. (b)

根据课文第13～14行"If then we are so certain that other

intelligent life exists in the universe, why have we had no visitors from outer space yet? First of all, they may have come to this planet of ours thousands or millions of years ago...(既然我们如此坚信宇宙中存在着其他有智力的生命,那么我们为什么还未见到外层空间来访的客人呢?首先,他们可能在几千年前或几百万年前已来过我们地球……)",得知选项(b)our planet may have been visited at some time during the distant past(我们的星球在遥远的过去的某个时间曾可能被造访过)为正确项。选项(a)there is a possibility that we constantly have visitors from outer space(可能我们经常有来自外层空间的造访者)与课文所述意义不符,因此为错误项。选项(c)an automatic messenger was left on our planet at some time in the past(在过去的某个时间曾留在我们星球上一个自动化信息装置)是射电天文学家罗纳德·布雷斯韦尔提出的观点,而不是本文作者的观点,故为错误项。选项(d)our civilisation is just awakening and is of interest to other beings(我们的文明正在觉醒,其他星球的高智力生命对此十分感兴趣)也并不是作者的观点,故为错误项。

3. (a)

根据课文第4段的描写,得知我们同外星人联系的最大困难就是横在我们之间的天文距离,即使以光速行驶也是不可能的,所以选项(a)even at the speed of light, distances are immense(即使以光速行驶,距离也是太遥远了)为正确项。选项(b)light travels at 186,000 miles per hour 是错误的,光速为每秒钟186,000英里。外星人(及星球)距我们的平均距离是100光年,而不是星球距我们正好100光年,所以选项(c)planets are 100 light years away(星球在100光年之外)为错误项。文中说我们尚没

(c)must be 为正确项。选项(a)was 和选项(d)is 表示某事是事实，这与原文意义不符。选项(b)might be 表示“某事有可能是真的，但并不十分确定”，这也与原文所表达的意思不符，因此为错误项。

6. (c)

课文中使用的副词 yet 常用于否定句句末，表示“尚未”，选项(c)so far 表示“直到目前”，用于该句中所表达的意思与 yet 相同，因此为正确项。选项(a)before、选项(b)in the past 和选项(d)till then 都与 yet 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

7. (d)

该题考查现在分词和过去分词作形容词的区别。现在分词作形容词时常与非人称主语连用，而过去分词作形容词时常与人称代词连用，如：This story is exciting.(这个故事激动人心。)I am excited by it.(我因这个故事而激动。)课文中使用 our prevailing primitive state(我们普遍存在的原始状态)这个非人称主语，使用形容词 uninteresting 表示“对……来说是索然无味的”。该题中主语为对普遍存在的原始状态不感兴趣的 They，为人称主语，故应该用过去分词，而且该题为否定句，所以选项(d)interested in 为正确项。选项(a)interesting to 和选项(b)interesting in 都不能用于主语为人称代词的句子中。选项(c)interested to 中介词使用有误，应该用介词 in。

8. (d)

课文中使用的主语是 primitive chemical rockets(原始的化学火箭)，使用 have no chance of transporting us 表达“不能将我们送到其他星球上去”，但是该题中的主语是“要被送到其他星球上的我们”，因此介词短语中不应再

用表示主动的 transporting，而应该用表示被动的 being transported，所以选项（d）of being transported 为正确项。选项（a）to be transporting、选项（b）to transport 和选项（c）of transporting 都表示主动而不是被动意义，故均为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

课文中使用的"be bound"表示"一定的"、"必然的"，选项（a）almost certain（几乎肯定）与其所表达的意思相同，因此为正确项。选项（b）obliged（必须做）、选项（c）required（被要求）和选项（d）due（预定）都与其意思不同，故均为错误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的 unsaid 意即"不说"、"不提"，选项（c）unmentioned（不提）与其同义，因此为正确项。动词 speak 常作不及物动词，只在个别情况下作及物动词，如：Do you speak English？（你说英语吗？）不及物动词不能用于被动语态，所以选项（a）unspoken 为错误项。选项（b）untold（未告诉）和选项（d）unrecounted（未详细叙述）均与 unsaid 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的短语动词 contact with 意即"与……联系"，选项（b）being in touch with（与……联系）所表达的意思与其相同，因此为正确项。选项（a）speaking to（与……讲话）、选项（c）touching（触摸）和选项（d）reaching out to（设法帮助；触及）都与其意思不同，故均为错误项。

12. (b)

课文中使用的形容词 precise 意即"精确的"，选项（b）exact与其同义，因此为正确项。选项（a）measurable

(可测量的)、选项(c)established(建立的)和选项(d)known(已知的)都与其意思不同,故均为错误项。

Lesson 44
Patterns of culture
文化的模式

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The statement 'No man ever looks at the world with pristine eyes' means that no one can view the world completely objectively.
2. The study of man has differed from the study of less controversial subjects in that it has only studied one variation, Western civilisation, instead of all possible variations.
3. Before he can undertake the study of man objectively, the anthropologist must accept the criterion that there is no preferential weighting between one human society and another.

词汇练习参考答案

The president will speak to the nation on a matter of great *moment*.

They suggested that the man's *aberrant* behaviour was the result of taking drugs.

The President of the United Nations played a *predominant role* in restoring peace to that part of the world.

The disease typically *manifests* itself in a high fever and chest pains.

The *probings* of the police into the man's finances eventually uncovered connections with organised crime.

When he spoke to the locals, he lapsed into the *vernacular*.

If the group of islands had been allowed to develop *autonomously* (instead of being governed from the mainland), things might have been a lot better for them.

'It is *incumbent* upon us all,' said the chairman rather pompously, 'to report all incidents of criminal activity, however minor, to the police.'

The vast majority of people are not *intelligent* as to the inner workings of the Civil Service.

The engineer's explanation was completely *unintelligible* to most of us because it was highly technical.

The first part of the exam, the oral interview, has always been given *preferential weighting* over the other two parts.

Although the proposal was extremely *controversial*, they managed to get it passed by the committee.

In medieval times the Church *held sway* over many countries in Europe.

摘要练习参考答案

From the moment we are born, our attitude to life is shaped by custom. It manifests itself in many varieties and plays a predominant role in experience and belief. It is impossible to view the world objectively because we are all influenced by a set of customs, institutions and ways of thinking. Even an individual's concepts of true and false are

conditioned by the customs of his community. By the time he can talk, a child is already the creation of his culture, and by the time he is grown up, he has actually become part of that culture. (99 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[There can be no absolute standards of right and wrong since our moral attitudes are conditioned by the society in which we live.]

While our moral attitudes may be conditioned by the society in which we live and by its customs and laws, this does not mean that there can be no absolute standards of right and wrong, standards which we can all aim at and which we somehow know to be right.

Perhaps we should first consider the proposition that our moral attitudes are conditioned by the society in which we live. It would be difficult to disagree with the commonly held view that our moral attitudes are to a large extent shaped by our parents, other members of our family and the circle of friends with whom the members of our family associate. For most of us, our concepts of right and wrong are taught to us, or instilled into us, by our parents. Pulling your sister's hair for no reason is wrong, picking her up when she has fallen down is right. Picking fruit from your father's trees is fine since the trees belong to the family, picking fruit from a neighbour's trees without asking is wrong. In Western cultures at least, saying 'Please' and 'Thank you' is right, demanding and receiving without saying anything is wrong.

Such simple and basic standards of right and wrong are

reinforced by other parent figures in our own society by praise or punishment—by our teachers at school, by the religious leaders in our community, and reinforced, too, by our peers who are being taught the same right and wrong. Even families in the same society have slightly different standards, but they all aim towards a common standard.

However, in this modern world of mass communication—radio, television, magazines and newspapers, e-mail and the Internet—there are many more influences on us and on our thinking than was ever the case in the past. The world *is* smaller, it is true, even though it is still composed of peoples with widely different cultures. International figures condemn criminal acts committed against the international community as a whole, or acts which eventually *involve* the international community as a whole, such as the hijacking of aircraft or oil tankers, or terrorist threats to international events like the Olympic Games. In condemning such acts, world leaders seem to be demonstrating that there *are* absolute standards of right and wrong, and in condemning, they rarely wave any particular religious or political banners.

In the same way, we deplore the circumstances in the modern world which allow thousands and thousands to die through lack of food and water or from diseases which we ought to be able to cure. Such situations are surely 'wrong' and the majority of us are horrified. Organised international aid again would seem to argue that there are standards which all communities and nationalities acknowledge, which are not related to any one particular political or religious creed, but which are, quite simply, 'humanitarian'.

There are absolute standards of right and wrong too when it comes to stealing, murder, rape, selling drugs, child abuse and abduction, and such crimes are utterly abhorrent to all decent, moral people in the world, regardless of their own religious or political beliefs. Eating people is wrong, wherever you come from. It is a pity that the laws and cultures of certain communities do not always reflect the standards of right and wrong which most promise in public to uphold. (559 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The noun *custom* means 'an established and habitual practice, especially of a religious or a social kind, that is typical of a particular group of people': *Social customs vary greatly from country to country.*

A *habit*, on the other hand, is 'a tendency to behave in a particular way or do particular things, esp. regularly and repeatedly over a long period': *She has an annoying habit of biting her fingernails.*

2. The noun *aspect* means 'a particular side of a many-sided situation, idea, plan, etc.': *The training programme covers every aspect of the job.*

A *view*, on the other hand, is 'something seen from a particular place, esp. a stretch of pleasant country; a scene': *I'd like a room with a view over the harbour, please.*

3. A *proportion* is 'the compared relationship between two

things in regard to size, amount, importance, etc.': *Your income tax will increase in proportion to the amount you earn.*

A *percentage*, on the other hand, is 'an amount stated as if it is part of a whole which is 100': *What percentage of the population now takes an annual holiday abroad?*

4. The adjective *unintelligible* is the opposite of *intelligible*, which means 'which can be understood': *His argument was completely unintelligible.*

   Unintelligent is the opposite of *intelligent*: *The new employee wasn't unintelligent, but he wasn't particularly clever, either.*

5. The adjective *controversial* means 'causing much argument or disagreement': *The council's decision to close the town centre to traffic was extremely controversial.*

   The adjective *argumentative* is used to describe people and means 'liking to argue': *I wouldn't bother to discuss the question with her: she's just an argumentative old lady.*

B. 1. The *accommodation* in the local inn was very comfortable indeed.

2. What kind of a *creature* is a panda? —I think it's a bear, but I'm not sure.

3. In her hand the little girl held a small glass *globe* full of liquid which gave the impression of a snowstorm when she shook it.

4. That young man is extremely *intelligent*, I think he

of his own baby talk that are taken up into the vernacular of his family(约翰·杜威曾经非常严肃地指出：风俗在形成个人行为方面所起的作用和一个人对风俗的任何影响相比，就好像他本国语言的总词汇量和自己初学讲话时他家庭所接纳他的词汇量之比)"，得知个人的思想和想法与传统相比实在是微不足道，所以选项(a)are minimal compared with the power of tradition(与传统势力相比是微不足道的)为正确项。个人思想和观点是无法主宰社团的规范和准则的，所以选项(b)will often dominate the patterns and standards handed down in the community(会时常主宰社团传下来的规范和准则)为错误项。人的信仰和行为是受所在的社会的影响，个人的思想和观点是塑造不了自己的信仰和行为的，所以选项(c)shape his own beliefs and behaviour(塑造自己的信仰和行为)为错误项。选项(d)are often completely unintelligible(常常是完全搞不懂的)与文章所述意义不符，因此为错误项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 20～21 行"Every child that is born into his group will share them with him, and no child born into one on the opposite side of the globe can ever achieve the thousandth part(每一个和他诞生在同一个社团中的孩子和他一样具有相同的风俗；而在地球的另一边，诞生在另一个社团的孩子与他就很少有相同的风俗)"，得知生长处于某一文化背景中的孩子不可能获知另一个文化中的风俗和传统，所以选项(a)will acquire the customs and traditions of another(不可能获知另一个文化中的风俗和传统)为正确项。生长在某一文化背景中的孩子不可能获知另一个文化中的风俗和传统并不等于不可能学习另一个文化中的东西，所以选项(b)will ever learn anything

about a different culture(不可能学习另一个不同文化中的任何东西)为错误项。文中并未谈到生活在两种不同文化背景中的孩子们是否相互明白的问题，所以选项(c)will be intelligible to a child of another culture(不可能被生长在另一个文化背景中的孩子所明白)为错误项。选项(d)will ever travel to the opposite side of the globe(不会旅行到地球的另一边去)与文中所述意义不符，因此为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文第 24 ~ 27 行"The study of custom can be profitable only after certain preliminary propositions have been accepted, and some of these propositions have been violently opposed. In the first place, any scientific study requires that there be *no* preferential weighting of one or another of the items in the series it selects for its consideration(只有在某些基本的主张被接受下来、同时有些主张被激烈反对时，对风俗的研究才是全面的，才会有收获。首先，任何科学研究都要求人们对可供考虑的诸多因素不能厚此薄彼，偏向某一方面)"，得知人类学家只有认为所有的文化都具有同等的价值，才能客观地研究人类社会，所以选项(a)regard all cultures as having equal value(认为所有的文化都具有同等的价值)为正确项。把自己同野蛮人区分开来就意味着不能同等地看待所有的文化，所以选项(b)distinguish between themselves and barbarians(将他们自己同野蛮人区别开来)为错误项。信仰超自然就不能客观地研究人类社会，所以选项(c)believe in the supernatural(信仰超自然)为错误项。单纯理解西方文明不能客观地研究全人类，所以选项(d)have a good understanding of Western civilisation(对西

方文明具有良好的理解)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (b)

课文中使用的形容词 worthy(值得的，配得上的)常跟介词 of 连用，如 worthy of praise(值得赞扬的)。该题中使用的介词 worth(值得)后面可以直接跟名词或动词的-ing形式，如：That place is definitely worth visiting.(那个地方太值得一看了。)又如 a house worth $200,000(一座值 20 万美元的房子)。所以选项(b)investigating 为正确项。其他 3 项的结构用于该句中都是错误的。

6. (b)

课文中主语为 The fact of first-rate importance，其中由介词短语作定语修饰 the fact。该题中使用的是由关系代词 what 引导的主语从句的结构，所以选项(b)What 为正确项。that 可以引导主语从句，如：That money doesn't grow on trees should be obvious.(金钱不能从树上长出来该是显而易见的。)that 在句子中只起到引导名词性从句的作用，它本身在句子中不作任何句子成分，但是在该题主语从句中没有主语，此时需用既可以引导从句同时又可以担任从句主语的关系代词 what，所以(a)That 为错误项。不能用 which 引导主语从句，所以选项(c)Which 为错误项。the thing that 可以引导定语从句，用来表示与 what 相当的含义，但选项(d)The thing 中缺少 that，故为错误项。

7. (b)

课文中的原句是"Until we are intelligent as to its laws and varieties, the main complicating facts of human life must remain unintelligible(直到我们理解了风俗的规律性和多样性，我们才能明白人类生活中主要的复杂现象)"(第

22～23 行），该句由连词 until 引导一个时间状语从句，主句采用否定词 unintelligible。该题中主句使用的是表示肯定意思的 intelligible，因此应该使用选项(b)When 引导从句，而不应该使用选项(a)Until。选项(c)As if 引导方式状语从句，表示“好像”，不能用于该句中。选项(d)Unless引导条件状语从句，表示“除非”，也不能用于该句中。

8．(b)

课文中使用的介词短语 in this way（用这种方法）表示“用这种方法，我们完全掌握了天文学的规律和昆虫群居的习性”。英语中可以由疑问词 who、whom、what、which、when、where、why 和 how 等引导名词性从句。该题就是一个带表语从句的复合句，由表示方式的疑问代词 how 引导该表语从句。选项(b)That's how（就是采用这种方法）为正确项。(a)That's when（就是在那时）中的疑问词 when 表示时间而不是方式，所以为错误项。选项(c)That's so 中的副词 so 不能引导名词性从句，因此为错误项。选项(d)That's as if 中的 as if 不能引导名词性从句，故为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9．(d)

课文中使用的过去分词 edited 意即“剪辑过的”，选项(d)modified（修改过的，剪辑过的）与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)examined（检查过的）、选项(b)cut down（削减过的）和选项(c)excluded（排斥在外的）都与 edited 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

10．(c)

课文中使用的 first and foremost 意即“首先”、“首要”，选项(c)above all 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)in the

first place（第一点）、选项（b）only（仅仅）和选项(d)exclusively(排他地)都与 first and foremost 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

11．(b)

课文中使用的形容词 preliminary 意即“最初的”，选项(b)initial与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)required(所要求的)、选项(c)advanced(先进的)和选项(d)exceptional(除外的)都与 preliminary 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

12．(a)

课文中使用的 preferential weighting 意即“厚此薄彼”、“偏见”，选项(a)bias 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(b)attitude（态度）、选项（c）belief（信仰）和选项(d)indication(迹象)都与 preferential weighting 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

Lesson 45
Of men and galaxies
人和星系

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The idea that we lack practice and experience nowadays in dealing with primitive conditions.
2. The inhabitants of Morocco differ from those of California because they have different thoughts.
3. 'When you are inside a community you are conditioned by the conventions of the community' means that everything you do and think is conditioned by your immediate environment.
4. Just twenty or thirty pages of ideas and information beyond our present thinking could change the course of world history.
5. A person with original ideas must be capable of thinking outside or beyond the particular patterns that our brains have been conditioned to.

词汇练习参考答案

The men have just reached a *critical* stage in their negotiations.

The building project is now entering its third *phase*.

If I were asked to play in a tennis tournament, *I would make a very poor show* as I haven't played for years.

In the relatively short time he was in power, Napoleon *subdued* much of Europe.

The environment that determines our evolution is now acknowledged to be intellectual as well as physical.

She felt that she was *wholly* justified in asking for her money back.

Finance must clearly be an important *factor* in deciding the future of the project.

When the woman heard the news of her husband's death, she was *utterly* devastated.

The plane changed *course* in order to avoid a storm.

With the instruments at our disposal, I'm afraid it's impossible to be more *accurate*.

摘要练习参考答案

When white men invaded a primitive culture, the most destructive effects always came from ideas, and ideas are dangerous. Free speech only exists because dangerous thoughts can only be injected from outside. There must be ideas that would destroy the modern world, argues the author, but he cannot give an example. Instead, he takes the idea of giving a reasonably advanced technological society the instructions on how to make a nuclear bomb. Had this information been given to the world in 1925, it would have changed the course of history. Twenty-odd pages of advanced ideas and information could still destroy the modern world, or at least turn it upside down. (110 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[The evolution of man.]

By its very definition, evolution is an extremely slow, gradual process of development. In the course of evolution over millions of years, some birds, for example, have gained, enjoyed and then lost the power of flight. Indeed the history of the ostrich begs the question: Are evolution and progress one and the same?

Evolutionary changes are usually conditioned by the physical environment, and often, in the case of living creatures, the need to adapt to changes in the physical environment in order to survive.

For hundred of thousands of years man's evolution took the form of development of physical features. To take just one example, man's early ape ancestors developed fingers in order to be able to handle things—food, stones, pieces of wood, and eventually tools and weapons. We can't use tools (to build and mend things) and weapons (to kill for food) without fingers—and for a long time we couldn't communicate in writing without using our fingers to hold a pen.

With the gradual loss of body hair and the need for warmth, man developed the concept of clothes in its simplest form—wearing a dead animal's skin—and he discovered fire. And with the need to kill animals for food and clothing (meat and skin), he began to devise simple weapons.

The social need to co-operate and form groups or tribes was probably the result of the need to hunt together with purpose, together with a need to protect the group members from external dangers. The development of reasoning and

tool-making eventually produced mechanical inventions such as the wheel, and the skills needed to construct buildings of all kinds, from the simplest stone shelter to the greatest Egyptian pyramid. And somewhere along the line, curiosity led to astronomy, religion and the production and appreciation of art.

It has been suggested that the arrival of a sense of religion, a sense of a god, was the greatest event in the evolution of man. It may, however, be that the development of speech and finally writing were probably the two most important factors in man's evolution to that of a thinking, communicating animal. Through speech he could express facts and opinions, he could make demands, he could describe past events to another, and express hopes and plans for the future. More importantly, speech and writing gave man the ability not only to be able to write down or record what he had done or was doing, but also to express thoughts about the future—to predict and to plan.

Fred Hoyle has suggested that the most important factor in man's evolution now and in the future is not physical, but mental. The changes in the world's climate, the world's weather patterns, might be of interest—floods, famine, fire, earthquakes and other natural disasters may affect hundreds of thousands of people—but they will probably not affect man's evolution any more. Men and women are not physically going to start sprouting fins because we are experiencing more floods. Ideas are what will now drive the course of man's evolution.

Physical evolutionary change is a very slow process indeed. Man has changed very little physically since he began walking perfectly upright, but he seems to have grown in knowledge in an amazingly short time. His evolution seems to be mental and

(主要存在于人类中间)为正确项。由于现代化的发展，动物已经不是人类的竞争对手，所以选项(a)takes place between humans and other animals(发生在人类和其他动物之间)为错误项。由于清理污水和喷洒化学药品，蚊子也不是人类的对手了，因此选项(b)has not been confined to humans versus mosquitoes(不仅局限在人类和蚊子之间)虽对但不是主要想表达的意思。竞争并不是由于缺乏对付原始环境的经验而产生的，因此选项(d)is the result of lack of experience in dealing with primitive conditions(是缺乏对付原始环境的经验的结果)为错误项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 11 ~ 12 行"Our environment is chiefly conditioned by the things we believe(我们的环境由我们信仰的东西所决定)"和第 15～16 行"The most important factor in our environment is the state of our own minds(我们环境中最重要的因素就是我们的思想状况)"，得知作者的观点是人类的信仰远比物质环境更为重要，因此选项(a)beliefs are more important than physical environment (信仰比物质环境更重要)为正确项。气候跟人的信仰无关，故选项(b)climate influences what people believe(气候影响人们的信仰)为错误项。作者的观点是人类重要的因素是信仰，所以人类进步取决于信仰而不是物质环境，故选项(c)human development is the product of physical environment(人类进步是物质环境的产物)为错误项。现在人类已经不再是为了生存、为了有限的食物进行简单的竞争了，因此选项(d)people compete for the fixed amount of food available in our environment(人们为我们环境中有限的食物而竞争)为错误项。

3. (d)

根据课文最后一段的叙述，特别是第 28～30 行“... that twenty or thirty pages of ideas and information would be capable of turning the present-day world upside down, or even destroying it(……二三十页材料中的思想和情报会使当今的世界天翻地覆，甚至毁灭这个世界)”，得知新的思想也就是超出常规的想法会危及现代社会，前文中提到的思想和情报指的就是这些超出常规的思想和情报，由此判断出选项(d)can be threatened by unfamiliar ideas(会受到陌生思想的威胁)为正确项。人类社会的风俗习惯约束着人们，使人们不至于产生危险的想法，所以选项(a) attempt to influence each other with dangerous thoughts(试图用危险的思想相互影响)为错误项。文中并未谈到其他民族入侵的问题，所以选项(b)are always threatened by the invasion of other people(总是受到其他民族入侵的威胁)为错误项。人类社会并不想摧毁原始文化，所以选项(c)tend to destroy primitive cultures(倾向于毁灭原始文化)为错误项。

4. (a)

根据课文 31～33 行“We cannot think outside the particular patterns that our brains are conditioned to, or, to be more accurate, we can think only a very little way outside, and then only if we are very original(我们不能脱离我们大脑所限定的模式去思考问题，我们只能稍微离开一点儿，就这也需要我们有独创的思想)”，得知虽然有些思想或想法会毁灭我们的社会，但是由于我们受生存环境的文化限制，我们不知道什么想法会摧毁我们的社会，因此选项(a)our imaginations are strictly limited by the cultures we live in(我们的想像力受文化背景的严格制约)为正确项。我们想像不出什么想法会摧毁我们的社

会,并不是因为言论自由的概念未被普遍接受,所以选项(b)the concept of free speech is not universally acceptable(言论自由的概念并非被普遍接受)为错误项。选项(c)we know exactly the kind of information that would turn the world upside-down(我们确切地知道会将世界整个儿颠倒的那种信息)也并不是我们想像不出什么想法会摧毁我们社会的原因,故为错误项。人们需要具有创造性思维能力才能跳出限定的思维模式去思考问题,但并不等于人们根本不具备创造性思维能力,因此选项(d)no one on earth ever has any original ideas(世界上没有人具有任何独创的思想)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

该句考查动词的时态。该句的主句虽然是一般现在时,但是从句是对过去事情的简单陈述,故应该用一般过去时,所以选项(c)was 为正确项。其他 3 项的时态均使用有误。

6. (c)

该题表达的意思是"我们中间的竞争仍在继续",课文中用的是副词 still,可以用选项(c)continues to 表达"仍在继续"的含义,故该项为正确项。选项(a)is enabled to(使得以)、选项(b)is seen to(被看到)和选项(d)attempts to(企图)都与 still 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

7. (a)

there is no doubt... 为固定结构,表达"毫无疑问……",该处 doubt 为名词,所以选项(a)There is no doubt 为正确项。其他 3 项的表达方法都是错误的。

8. (c)

该题考查虚拟语气的用法。该句中的条件状语从句所陈述的是非真实的过去条件,应该用过去完成时结构表示,

所以选项(c)had been 为正确项。其他 3 项中的动词形式都不能表达该非真实的过去条件，故均为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文中使用的及物动词 dispute 意即“争论”，与选项(d)arguing about(为……而争执)同义，因此(d)为正确项。选项(a)engaging in(从事)、选项(b)quarrelling with(与……争吵)和选项(c)discussing(讨论)所表达的意思均与 dispute 不同，故为错误项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的是动词 envision(预想，想像)的过去分词 envisioned，与选项(c)imagined(被想像的)同义。选项(a)seen(被看到的)、选项(b)obvious(明显的)和选项(d)established(被建立的)都与 envisioned 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

11. (d)

课文中使用的名词 heretics 意即“异教徒”，选项(d)dissidents表示“持不同意见或观点的人”，与 heretics 所表达的意思相同，故为正确项。选项(a)philosophers(哲学家)、选项(b)missionaries(传教士)和选项(c)enemies(敌人)都与 heretics 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的名词 conventions 意即“习俗”、“惯例”，选项(c)accepted behaviour(被接受的行为举止)是对 conventions 的解释，故为正确项。选项(a)laws(法律)、选项(b)regulations(规章)和选项(d)boundaries(界限)都与 conventions 所表达的意思不符，故均为错误项。

Lesson 46
Hobbies
业余爱好

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. The definition of worry is relevant to the author's argument because it places in context the need for hobbies and other interests.
2. The author describes as unfortunate those people who can command everything they want because what they really need to balance their lives are not hobbies, other pleasures or excitement, but discipline.
3. People who have everything they want can find relief from boredom in discipline in one form or another.
4. The essential difference between the two classes of human being defined by the author is that for one group, the smaller group, work and pleasure are the same thing.
5. It is particularly important for people whose work is their pleasure to cultivate a hobby because they need an alternative outlook or a change of atmosphere so that they can banish their work from their minds for a short while.

词汇练习参考答案

I had a sudden *spasm* in my leg and could hardly walk for a few

minutes.

It's *futile* writing a letter of complaint because the company never answers.

They had ways of *insinuating* their ideas into the brains of sleepers.

After his operation, he was advised to go to the country for a period of *recuperation*.

If you want a change from work, I suggest you take on some *alternative mental interests*.

The patient began to breathe more easily following a *vivifying* intake of oxygen through an oxygen mask.

In the past, slaves were often quite literally *toiled to death*.

She wasn't too worried when she lost the necklace because it only cost a *trifling* amount of money.

Rich parents often give in to every *caprice* of their children by giving them whatever they want.

The *satiation* of my curiosity is what drives me to read incessantly for information.

Our local priest was so devoted to his work that he regarded any days away from the church as *enforced interruptions in an absorbing vocation*.

摘要练习参考答案

While a hobby or a new form of interest is important, it is not something that can be chosen quickly. Indeed the growth of a hobby is a long-term business. It must be chosen well and nurtured. The author maintains that, to be really happy, you should have two or three hobbies and that you must like what you do. It is no good taking up a hobby late in life as it can

cause aggravation. He stresses that different kinds of people need completely different kinds of hobbies. (89 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[My favourite hobby.]

Is a hobby some activity which you enjoy doing, but which does not earn any money? No, it isn't. I know a number of people who in fact earn a small income from their hobbies while they still have a full-time job. Is a hobby some kind of activity which you have chosen to do, which takes you away from the routine and worries of everyday life and helps you to relax? Yes, it is all of these things.

I have a small number of hobbies or pastimes—I play the piano, I sing in a choir, I collect antiques, I play chess, I enjoy sailing, I read a lot and I like gardening.

I imagine that the vast majority of people's favourite hobbies are completely incomprehensible and boring to others, even to their friends and relatives. 'What do you want to do *that* for?' they say with contempt. 'What a total waste of time!' There are many hobbies that I myself find impossible to understand, but usually my judgment is based on the question 'How creative is it?' You will no doubt think me wrong, but I have this feeling that a hobby or pastime which is totally passive, even though it gives the person pleasure, is nevertheless selfish and wasteful.

My own favourite hobby, I must confess, is collecting old wine glasses, and by 'old' I mean glasses from the 19th century. They are not hard to find; there are still a lot that have survived and they can be found in old secondhand shops

and at the bottom of boxes of rubbish in auction sales.

What do you do *that* for? You might ask. What's the attraction? First of all, there is the Hunt. Just looking for kinds of glasses that you haven't got has provided me with hours of enjoyment. Whenever I am in a different town and can find five minutes, I go into one or two secondhand shops, just to see if I can find something And quite often I view auction sales to see if there are any in the 'rubbish lots' that I might buy cheaply.

Then there is finding out about them; I call it Information-gathering and Learning. Since I started collecting old wine glasses, I have also acquired quite a large library, so I have managed to teach myself quite a lot about the subject—by reading, looking at photos, and handling the real things.

At first, when I had just a small number of glasses, I used to put them on shelves. After a while, however, I realized that I was beginning to assemble a representative selection of glasses right through the 19th century and felt that I should display them better. Displaying them, then, involved constructing a special cabinet—something I had never done before.

Socialising and Exchanging Information is another aspect of many hobbies, and in my own case I joined a glass collectors' club.

Like many collectors, I try to acquire items for my collection very cheaply so that I can sell them later—not to make a profit, you understand, but in order to buy another better, or rarer glass.

For me, the productive part of such a hobby comes in doing research and then writing about the subject. It seems

that, if someone has spent some considerable time acquiring knowledge, he or she should pass on that knowledge, either in the form of a physical collection or in the form of a written record—magazine articles or even a book. Perhaps one day I will write that book. (597 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The plane took off *late*.
   I haven't seen old Mr. James *lately*.
   2. We have *hardly* slept at all since we arrived in the city.
   That boy works extremely *hard* and deserves to do well.
   3. The adjective *alternative* means 'different from what is usual or traditional': *We are gradually beginning to use alternative sources of energy more, wave power and wind power, for example.*
   Alternating, on the other hand, means 'following by turns': *She treated him with alternating affection and contempt. They wore the spy down with alternating periods of kindness and cruelty.*

B. 1. It was clear that the government's actions were sowing the *seeds* of rebellion.
   2. The man sadly died before he could enjoy the *fruits* of all his hard work.
   3. All I want to do after a hard day's *sweat* is to soak in a

is a long process(精神上多种情趣的培养是一个长期的过程)"(第 9 行),由此得知选项(b)can only occur over a long period of time(只能通过很长的时间才能培养出来)为正确项。本文谈论培养某种爱好是为了解除烦恼,而不是为了避免无聊,因此选项(a)prevents you from being bored to death(防止你极度无聊)为错误项。文中谈到培养爱好对从事社会活动的人至关重要,所以选项(c)is particularly suitable for the professional or business man(特别适合专业人员和商人)为错误项。培养某种爱好并非总是有益的,因此选项(d)is always a benefit(总是有益的)为错误项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 22～24 行"As for the unfortunate people who can command everything they want, who can gratify every caprice and lay their hands on almost every object of desire—for them a new pleasure, a new excitement is only an additional satiation(至于那些能任意支配一切的可怜的人,他们能够恣意妄为,能染指一切追求的目标。对这种人来说,多一种新的乐趣、多一种新的刺激只是增加一分厌腻而已)",得知作者认为可以随意花钱的人是真正不幸的人,因此选项(d)are truly unlucky(是真正不幸的)为正确项。选项(a)are Fortune's favoured children(是命运之神的宠儿)与文中所述意义恰恰相反,因此为错误项。选项(b)never feel bored(从不觉得无聊)并不是有钱人的感觉,故为错误项。选项(c)enjoy a life that is full of excitement(享受充满激情的生活)也并非是富人的感受,因此为错误项。

4. (b)

作者在课文第 30 行谈到"But Fortune's favoured children

belong to the second class(但是,命运之神的宠儿是第2种人)",其中谈到的第2种人指那些把工作和娱乐当作一回事儿的人,所以作者最羡慕的是这样的人,因此选项(b)don't distinguish between work and pleasure(并不将工作和娱乐区分开)为正确项。选项(a)can spend their entire lives on holiday(能将一生花在度假上)并不是作者所羡慕的人。作者谈到的两种人都是理智的、勤劳的、有用的,但是他最羡慕的是第2种人,因此选项(c)are rational, industrious and useful(理智的、勤劳的并有用的)为错误项。作者最羡慕的是那种把工作当作享受的人,而不是将工作和休闲分开的人,因此选项(d)work hard and can therefore enjoy their leisure(工作努力,因此能享受闲暇)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (d)

英语中可以用 it is no use doing sth. 表示"做某事无济于事",所以选项(d)arguing 为正确项。其他3项在句子结构上都不正确。名词 use 后不用介词,后面只能跟动词的-ing 形式,而不能跟动词不定式等。

6. (a)

课文中使用的情态助动词 must 表示"必须",选项(a)have to be 可被用来表达"必须"的含义,因此为正确项。选项(b)should be(应该)、选项(c)were probably(可能)和选项(d)are probably(可能)所表达的都不是"必须"的含义,故均为错误项。

7. (b)

本题考查定语从句的先行词与关系代词的关系问题。该句中的关系代词是表示人的 who,课文中使用 those 为关系代词的先行词,还可以用 the ones 为先行词替代

those,所以选项(b)the ones 为正确项。其他 3 个选项都不能作该句中 who 的先行词,故均为错误项。

8.(c)

课文中使用的是复合连词 not only...but also,复合连词 both...and 所表达的意思与前者相同,如:She both plays the piano and the violin.(她又弹钢琴又拉小提琴。)The place is not only cold, but also damp.(这个地方又冷又潮。)所以选项(c)both...and 为正确项。选项(a)not only...and 中的 and 应该是 but。选项(b)either...or 所表达的是"或……或",即从两者中进行选择,如:You can either have tea or coffee.(你可以要茶或要咖啡。)选项(d)and...and 用于该句中结构和语义都不正确。

Vocabulary 词汇

9.(d)

课文中使用的形容词 futile 意即"徒劳的"、"无用的",选项(d)pointless(徒劳的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)elaborate(煞费苦心的)、选项(b)desirable(称心如意的)和选项(c)fertile(肥沃的)都与 futile 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

10.(a)

课文中使用的动词 tend 意即"照料",选项(a)cared for 与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)grown(生长)、选项(c)watered(浇灌)和选项(d)followed(跟随)都与 tend 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

11.(b)

该题考查对 a manual labourer(体力劳动者)的含义的理解。选项(b)his hands(双手)对 a manual labourer 作了解释,意即"体力劳动者用双手工作"。选项(a)his firm(他的公司)、选项(c)machines(机器)和选项(d)his mind(他

的脑子)都不是对 a manual labourer 的正确解释。

12. (d)

课文中使用的形容词 industrious 意即"勤劳的",选项(d)hard-working(努力工作的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)professional(专业的)、选项(b)employed(被雇用的)和选项(c)industrial(工业的)都与 industrious 所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

Lesson 47
The great escape
大逃亡

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. Three factors which induce people to go camping are: a) cost; b) it's an escape from hotels and the fear of how to behave in them; and c) you can take your car right into the camp site.
2. 'To this pleasure camping gives an exquisite refinement' refers to the sense of independence and freedom you get from a car.
3. Idealists have objected to the practice of camping because they say campers do not get to know the residents of the country. They have been proved wrong since, while hotels might tend to cater for one nationality, camp sites are very cosmopolitan.
4. The factors which may lead to the death of the more independent kind of camping are how many heath fires campers cause, how much litter they leave behind, and whether campers alienate landowners and others who live in the country.

词汇练习参考答案

The need for money is a powerful *motive* for crime.

After only a small *initial outlay upon equipment*, window cleaning can be quite a lucrative business.

Cars of all makes stood in a neat row in the car sales yard, *hub to hub* and wheel to wheel.

That man's too timid *to say boo to* a goose.

Granted, I haven't got any qualifications yet, but by this time next year I will have gained my diploma.

'The weather was rather *inclement*,' said my friend's old aunt, rather pompously.

The *package tour* that we went on included absolutely everything from the time we left to the time we got back.

It has been said that British attitudes to Europe in the past have been the result of their *insularity*.

There is one hotel in the town that caters *exclusively* for disabled people.

London is one of the most *cosmopolitan* cities in the world.

At certain times of the year there was a *preponderance* of students from South America in our language school.

People are often *wary of itinerants* and although they would like to help them, they regard them, often wrongly, as troublesome tramps.

After the open-air pop concert the organisers picked up hundreds of bags of *litter* from the field.

摘要练习参考答案

Every year modern camping equipment becomes more sophisticated. Perhaps this is a necessary development to supply

the material comforts that people would expect in hotels if only they were not afraid to go to them, for camping releases people from the fears, for example, of how to deal with hotel staff, from doorman to management. There may be a certain snobbery in camping, too, but most people understand that and can deal with it. The other thing that camping does is to allow car worshippers to take the car on holiday with them. They drive to the site in it, some actually make it part of the tent, and they use it to drive away when the beach is too crowded or the local weather too bad to go to the beach. Unlike some holiday hotels, many of which tend to cater exclusively for one nationality of visitors, European camp sites are highly cosmopolitan. (154 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[What, in your opinion, are the requirements of an ideal holiday?]

When I think back to the different holidays that I have experienced in my past, some with my parents when I was a child, and some with my own family now that I am a father, I have to confess that the essence of an ideal holiday is hard to grasp.

An ideal holiday seems to depend on so many things. It depends on where you go and for how long; it depends on what time of year you go and what the weather is like; it depends on how much you have paid for the holiday—very little or an enormous amount of money; it depends on exactly what kind of holiday it is meant to be—an activity holiday or a lazy holiday; it depends on what the journey to the holiday destination is like

and how, if you are going to a completely new destination, you have envisaged it; it depends on whether you organise it yourself or if it is a package holiday. In short, it depends on so much. And yet, in spite of all, most of us enjoy our holidays.

For me personally, the first requirement of a holiday is that it must be *a complete change* from my everyday life. A computer programmer, for example, would be well advised to do all those things that he cannot do at work and which take little mental effort, like swimming, snorkelling, walking and reading.

Like my everyday life, however, a holiday must also contain *variety*. I need periods of activity and periods of total relaxation, and I need both mental and physical periods of relaxation and activity. There is no point in exchanging a completely physical job for a holiday full of physical activity: you need physical relaxation with some mental stimulation as well.

For me, too, a holiday must, at least in part, be *novel, interesting and stimulating*. The criticism that I have heard from people returning from their annual holiday, even spent in a new destination, is that 'there was nothing to do'. What they usually mean, I gather, is that, after the initial sigh of relief at being able to relax in the sunshine on the beach or by the hotel swimming pool, they quite quickly become bored. This is just what they have dreamed of for months, but this is not what they want. What they have dreamed of is the settling-down period before their holiday proper begins.

Another thing that I would like a holiday to do for me is to *open a new chapter* in my life. Let me explain. Imagine you

are on a 'beach holiday' and that one evening you are invited to a village to join in some local dancing. You go; you are not very keen, but you go. During the evening, however, someone says that you can play the guitar a little and you are asked to join the band. You do, and you enjoy it very much—and the locals say that you do very well. What happens after that is, quite simply, that when you get back home, you go on playing in a Greek/Spanish/Japanese band. The holiday has opened a new chapter for you, a new sphere of interest.

What Churchill wrote about hobbies, it seems, is equally applicable to holidays. For him, hobbies answer 'the need for an alternative outlook, of a change of atmosphere, of a diversion of effort', and these are also qualities that should be looked for in an ideal holiday. After all, hobbies and holidays have one thing in common: the object of both is to take you away from the humdrum of everyday life. (609 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

See text.

难点练习参考答案

A. 1. The adjective *inital* means 'which is (at) the beginning': *After she had overcome her inital shyness, she became very friendly.*

The adjective *primary* means 'chief, main, or principal': *The primary purpose of his visit is to discuss the local housing problem.* (It is also used to describe education for children between 5 and 11 years old: *He still goes to a primary school. She has been a*

Some societies practise ancestor worship.

A *warship* /ˈwɔːʃɪp/ is 'a naval ship used for war, especially one armed with guns': *They sent four warships to guard the convoy of twenty cargo boats.*

6. The phrase *by contrast* means 'in comparison with objects or situations that are dissimilar, esp. to show differences': *The coastal areas have mild winters, but by contrast the central plains become extremely cold.*

   The noun *opposite*, often in the phrase 'the complete opposite to', means 'a person or thing that is as different as possible from another': *She's rather quiet, the complete opposite to her sister, who is bubbly and full of life.*

B. 1. The circulation of the magazine has been *bumping* along for some time at about 30,000.

2. After years of slow and careful negotiations, the island was finally *granted* its independence.

3. The usual *custom* there is for a bride to wear a white dress.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 2～3 行"But, contrary to a popular assumption, it is far from being the only one, or even the greatest (但是,和一般的看法相反,这决非是仅有的,甚至不是最主要的动机)",这里提到的动机是指省钱。从中我们了

解到人们露营并不是为了省钱。在第一段中作者还列出了一些名牌汽车，这表明去露营的人都是有钱人，而不是骑自行车去露营的穷人，这就进一步说明了省钱不是人们去露营的主要理由，因此选项(c)not necessarily so that they are saving money(并非是他们想省钱不可)为正确项。通过前文所述，我们了解到人们并不是为了省钱才去露营的，所以选项(a) they can spend less on their holidays(他们可以在假期中少花一些钱)为错误项。选项(b)their enjoyment of owning camping equipment(陶醉于拥有露营设备)也并不是人们去露营的理由。选项(d)because they can show off their cars(他们可以炫耀他们的汽车)同样也不是他们去露营的理由。

2. (a)

根据课文第 9～11 行"The modern traveller is often a man who dislikes the Splendide and the Bellavista, not because he cannot afford, or shuns their material comforts, but because he is afraid of them. Affluent he may be, but he is by no means sure what to tip the doorman or the chambermaid(现代露营旅游的人往往讨厌住'斯普兰迪德'和'贝拉维斯塔'这样的大酒店，这并不是因为他们付不起钱，也不是为了躲避物质享受，而是因为他们害怕酒店。他们可能很富有，但是给看门人和房间女服务员多少小费，心中却根本没数)"，得知许多现代的露营者是相当富有的，他们不喜欢住大酒店，所以选项(a)stay at hotels, but prefer not to(住得起但是不喜欢住在大酒店)为正确项。露营本身也是度假，所以选项(b) have holidays, but choose not to(有假期，但是不想度假)为错误项。富人们是开着名牌车去露营，所以选项(c)buy expensive cars, but prefer cheap models(购买得起昂贵的

汽车,但是喜欢便宜牌子的车)为错误项。许多富人都选择去露营,所以选项(d)visit camping sites, but generally avoid them(光顾露营地点,但是一般避开这些地方)与课文所述意义不符,故为错误项。

3. (a)

课文的第5段主要描述了驾车去露营所带来的极大的灵活性和机动性,这也是露营者喜欢该露营方式的原因之一,所以选项(a) Modern campers enjoy considerable mobility(可见代露营者享受着相当大的灵活性)为正确项。选项(b) Modern campers look down on people who stay at expensive hotels(当代露营者看不起住在昂贵酒店里的人们)课文中并未提到,故为错误项。选项(c)Modern campers are always moving from one place to another(可见代露营者总是从一个地方移到另一个地方)与课文所述意义不符,因此为错误项。文中谈到,当天气恶劣时,露营者逃离假日地狱,由此得知他们并不喜欢在恶劣的天气中露营,所以选项(d)Modern campers enjoy camping even in bad weather(可见代露营者即使在恶劣的天气也喜欢露营)为错误项。

4. (d)

课文的第6段描述了露营营地的世界性,各国的游客、文字、饭菜以及邀请露营者参加舞会的招贴都表明了露营营地的人们喜欢自由交往,由此得知选项(d)like to mix freely and get to know each other(喜欢自由的融合和相互了解)为正确项。选项(a)like to keep to themselves(喜欢自我封闭)与课文所述意义恰好相反,因此为错误项。选项(b)often have arguments about the use of facilities(经常为使用设施而争吵)与该段所述意义不符,因此为错误项。露营者有违反规章的情况,但并不是经常发生,故选

项(c)frequently disobey the camping site rules(经常违反露营营地的规章)为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (b)

课文中使用的是由 that 引导的主语从句结构。该题使用先行词 it 作主语而将主语从句置于句末的结构。选项(b)It is 为正确项。选项(a)There is 和选项(c)There has 中的 there 不能充当先行主语,因此为错误项。选项(d)It has 中不应用 has,而应用系动词 is。

6. (c)

课文中使用的是直接由形容词 affluent 引导的让步状语从句。在正式的英语语体中,当 as 和 though 表示"不管到什么程度"的意思时,可以用于某些形容词、副词或动词之后引导让步状语从句,如:Unlikely as it may sound, what I'm telling you is true.(不管听起来多么不可能,我告诉你的话是真的。)有时 as 和 though 可以省略。因此选项(c)Though 为正确项。选项(a)Since、选项(b)Because和选项(d)As 表示"由于"、"因为",引导原因状语从句,而不是让步状语从句,故均为错误项。

7. (a)

课文中使用的是省略的让步状语从句"Master in his own house..."(第 11 行)。完整的从句结构应该是:Although he is master in his own house...。该题中未使用复合句,而使用并列句,且前后两句话是转折关系,所以选项(a)He is...but 为正确项。选项(b)He has...and 中的动词不应用 has,因为这里表达的意思是"是",而不是"有",连词也不应是 and。选项(c)He does...but 中的动词使用有误。选项(d)He was...though 中的动词时态用错了,不应是过去时态,前后时态应该一致,此外不应用连

词 though，因为该句中主要陈述的内容是后一句，而不是前句。

8．(c)

英语中“be + 动词不定式的被动形式”可表示“能够”、“可以”的意思，更常用于告示或说明中，如：This cover is not to be removed.（不得揭开该外罩。）课文中使用的正是该结构：“The contemporary phenomenon of car worship is to be explained...”（第 16～17 行）。该句中的主语，即被解释的对象“The contemporary phenomenon of car worship”在该题中不再是句子主语，而成为句子的宾语，所以该句应该为主动语态，故选项(c)You can explain 为正确项。选项(a)It is explained 后面应该跟主语从句，但该句后面只是句子的宾语，所以不正确。而且，用选项(b)To explain 和选项(d)To be explained 之后都构不成完整的句子。

Vocabulary 词汇

9．(d)

课文中使用的形容词 sophisticated 意即“讲究的”，选项(d)refined（讲究的）与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)superseded（替代的）、选项(b)demanding（苛求的）和选项(c)complicated（复杂的）都与 sophisticated 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

10．(b)

课文中使用的 can't afford 意即“买不起”，选项(b)can't pay for 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)ridicules（嘲笑）、选项(c)has contempt for（瞧不起）和选项(d)dislikes（不喜欢）都与其意思不同，因此均为错误项。

11．(b)

课文中使用的形容词 contemporary 意即“当前的”、“现代

的”，选项(b)modern(现代的)与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)latest(最近的)、选项(c)up-to-date(最新的)和选项(d)recent(新近的)都与 contemporary 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的短语动词 cater for 意即“接待”、“提供服务”，选项(c)provide for 与其同义，因此为正确项。选项(a)acknowledge(感谢)、选项(b)appeal to(对……有吸引力)和选项(d)include(包括)都与 cater for 所表达的意思不同，故均为错误项。

Lesson 48
Planning a share portfolio
规划股份投资

1 语法、词汇与写作练习

理解练习参考答案

1. A serious investor should have a proper portfolio with a well-planned selection of investments, a definite structure and a clear aim.
2. We know that there is no 'right way' to invest money because no five reputable stockbrokers will give you the same advice.
3. If you're investing money, one of the worst things you can do is to sink all of your money into one company.
4. You should sort out the basics—mortgage, pension, insurance and access to sufficient cash reserves.
5. If you were an older investor you would probably want to preserve your capital and generate extra income.
6. If you are a younger investor, you can afford to take an aggressive approach.
7. Whatever your age, the main thing you have to do when investing money is to spread the risk.

词汇练习参考答案

They blamed the *shortage* of water on the lack of rainfall in the

previous six months.

The racecourse was full of *tipsters* telling us which horses to gamble on.

The young man was left $500,000 by his father, but he *frittered* it all away on wine, women and song.

If you want to *structure a portfolio*, my advice to you is to discuss it with a stockbroker.

She is *undoubtedly* an excellent singer, but she's not a very good dancer.

He's been *sinking* all his extra cash into his weekend business, so he is praying it will succeed.

I sincerely hope we have *sufficient cash reserves* to pay for any out-of-pocket expenses.

Before the bank would lend me any money, they wanted to know all my *personal circumstances*.

When you have saved money throughout your life, the thing you want most is a way of *preserving your capital* so that you can draw on it when you get older.

A lot of older people live a pretty *pedestrian* life compared with younger people.

摘要练习参考答案

If you are a serious private investor, what you need is a portfolio with a selection of investments, a definite structure and a clear aim. There are some wrong ways to structure a portfolio, but one thing is certain: never put all your money into one company or investment. As an older person, you should have sorted out your mortgage, pension, insurance and access to cash reserves, so you need to preserve your capital and

generate extra income. The best way to do that is to construct a portfolio with some shares, some gilts, cash deposits and convertibles. (98 *words*)

作文练习参考答案

[Saving and spending.]

It was Mr. Micawber in Charles Dickens' novel *David Copperfield*, who said (and this has been brought up to date and changed from old English pounds to dollars!): 'Annual income $20,000, annual expenditure $19,950, result happiness. Annual income $20,000, annual expenditure $20,050, result misery.' Although this was written in the nineteenth century, it is as true today as it ever was. It is a warning about earning, spending and saving money.

Why do we work? Why do we spend a large proportion of our lives, that period between youth and old age, in fact, working? And why do most of us have to spend something like three-quarters of every week 'at work'? For one simple reason: to earn money so that we can at least feed ourselves and our family and survive. Beyond that, everything else is a bonus.

Granted, there are some of us who do not work at all. Some avoid work, they choose not to work, and manage to live on the State or the generosity of others. Some cannot work because of mental or physical disability and are looked after by the rest of us. And there are others, like farmers, potters and other craftsmen, writers and other artists, who work for themselves. But the rest, the vast majority, work for someone else—they work for an employer, a company or the

Many people now know what they need to spend on themselves and their family in order to survive, often in order to maintain their present lifestyle, and therefore how much they need to earn. But most acknowledge that they really need to earn more. And why? Mainly in order to save at least a small amount for the future, and particularly to pay for unforeseen events.

So, having spent money on all of the necessities of life, and having managed perhaps to save a small amount for the future, they are in Mr. Micawber's happy land. And what about any extra which might be needed for leisure, for entertainment, for travel? For many, there is quite simply no 'extra' for leisure, because if they are even tempted to overspend, they will enter Mr. Micawber's world of misery.

(610 *words*)

关键句型练习参考答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

难点练习参考答案

See text.

2 多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

作者在第1段将投资者分为两种，一种是认真的投资者，另一种则是想迅速发财致富的人。由此得知，作者是对这两种人进行区分，所以选项(c)those who want to make

money fast(那些想迅速致富的人)为正确项。选项(a)people who gamble at Las Vegas(那些在拉斯韦加斯赌博的人们)是作者用来比喻那些想迅速致富的人,所以为错误项。选项(b)private investors(私人投资者)并不是作者所要区分的投资者。选项(d)newcomers to the stock market(股票市场的新手)并不一定是不认真的投资者,所以为错误项。

2. (c)

根据课文第2段的内容,得知即便你找5个有威望的经纪人咨询也不会得到一个理想的答案,也不会使你很容易地作出决定,所以选项(c)won't find it easy to decide, even with good advice(即便有很好的忠告,也不会很容易地作出决定)为正确项。作者提到找5个经纪人,并不是说你必须要找5个,而是说明要想作出决定并非易事,所以选项(a)should get at least five opinions(应该至少得到5种意见)为错误项。任何一个经纪人都不会建议你将所有的钱投资给一个公司,所以选项(b)should put all your money into a young company(应该将你所有的钱投资给一个初开的公司)为错误项。选项(d)should make sure you have sufficient funds after meeting all your other expenses(应该确保满足你所有其他花费之后还有足够的资金)也并不是进行投资必备的前提条件,所以为错误项。

3. (b)

根据课文第11~12行"These are partly a matter of personal circumstances, partly a matter of psychology(这里一方面是个人所处的环境,另一方面是个心理学的问题)",得知投资首先要依据自己各方面的具体情况如年龄等,所以选项(b)your age and circumstance(你的年龄和

环境)为正确项。投资要靠自己的实际情况,而不是依据个人想获得多少钱,因此选项(a)how quickly you want to make a lot of money(你想多快地获得许多钱)为错误项。选项(c)how much money you have available for investment(你有多少可以进行投资的资金)和选项(d)how much income you expect from your investments(你希望从投资中获得多少收入)都不是进行投资首要考虑的问题。

4. (c)

根据课文第21~22行"The golden rule here is spread your risk—if you put all of your money into Periwigs International, you're setting yourself up as a hostage to fortune(这里的指导原则是:分散你的投资风险。如果你把所有的资金投入佩里威格斯国际公司,你就把自己当成了命运的人质)",得知投资最重要的原则是不要孤注一掷。所以不会有任何经纪人建议你将所有的钱投入到一个公司,因此选项(c)shouldn't 'put all your eggs in one basket'(不要"孤注一掷")为正确项。选项(a)should select stocks that will grow in value(应该选择增值的股票)、选项(b)will have sleepless nights whatever you decide(无论你作出什么决定你都会睡不着觉的)和选项(d)should understand your personality very well(应该十分熟悉你的性格)都不是所有经纪人的共识,所以均为错误项。

Structure 句型

5. (c)

课文中使用"There is no shortage of tipsters around"(第1行),从反面表达"有许多情报贩子",该题中使用肯定形式表达"有许多情报贩子",所以选项(c)plenty of 为正确

项。plenty of 可以用来修饰不可数名词，也可以修饰复数可数名词，如：There is plenty of time.（有充分的时间。）There are plenty of chairs.（有许多椅子。）选项(a)many of 中不应用介词 of。选项(b)a lot 只用于指"大量"，如：They talk a lot about freedom.（他们大肆谈论自由。）其后不能跟名词，所以为错误项。选项(d)much 用于修饰不可数名词，不能修饰可数名词，因此为错误项。

6.(c)

该题考查虚拟语气的用法。当询问或谈论想像当时的情况或结果时，句子结构为：在条件状语从句中使用"if + 过去完成时"；在主句中使用"主语 + would have + 过去分词"，如：If I had lost my job, I would have gone abroad.（假如我当时失业了，我就会到国外去了。）该题就是对当时情况的一种假设，所以选项(c)had asked 为正确项。情态助动词 would 不用于条件句中，所以选项(a)would ask 为错误项。在谈论将要发生的、十分可能的事情时，在条件句中使用现在时。该句并不是谈论这种事情，所以选项(b)ask 为错误项。情态助动词 will 不用于条件句中，所以选项(d)will ask 为错误项。

7.(c)

该题考查"the + 比较级 + the + 比较级"的用法。这种结构用形容词或副词表示因果：当一方有变化时，另一方也随之而变，如：The more money you make, the more you spend.（你钱赚得越多，花得也越多。）该题从句以 the younger 开头，故选项(c)the more 为正确项。选项(a)the extra 不能构成上述结构。选项(b)more 缺少定冠词 the。选项(d)the less 语义和逻辑均不当。

8.(d)

课文中使用的介词 alongside 意即"同……一起"，选项

(d)side by side(同……一起)与其表达的意思相同,因此为正确项。选项(a)apart(单独的,分开的)不仅语义与alongside不同,此外也不与介词with连用,而常与from连用。选项(b)beside(在……附近)、选项(c)as well as(不仅)都与alongside所表达的意思不符,故均为错误项。

Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

课文中使用的动词fritter意即"挥霍"、"浪费",选项(b)waste(浪费)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)scatter(分散,散播)、选项(c)invest(投资)和选项(d)gamble(赌博)都与fritter所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的短语动词sort out意即"料理清楚",选项(a)taken care of(料理清楚)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)ordered(命令)、选项(c)discharged(释放)和选项(d)differentiated(分辨)都与sort out所表达的意思不同,因此均为错误项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的动词boost意即"提高"、"增加",如boost prices(提高价格),选项(a)increase(提高,增加)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(b)facilitate(使……容易)、选项(c)establish(建立)和选项(d)replace(替代)都与boost所表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

12. (b)

课文中使用的形容词sanguine意即"乐观的",选项(b)confident(乐观的,有信心的)与其同义,因此为正确项。选项(a)reckless(冒失的,鲁莽的)、选项(c)bloody(流血的,血腥的)和选项(d)adventurous(冒险的)都与sanguine表达的意思不同,故均为错误项。

[General Information]
书名=新概念英语练习详解
作者=
页数=483
SS号=0
出版日期=